This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

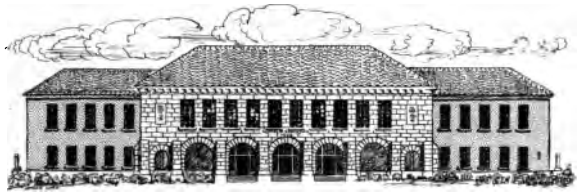
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

TX 478.21 .B282 BK.2
Barss, John Edmund,
Writing Latin ... /
Stanford University Libraries
3 6105 04926 6815



SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK
COLLECTION

STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES

Rock Salt for Pigs

GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

WRITING LATIN

BOOK TWŌ—THIRD AND FOURTH YEAR WORK

BY

JOHN EDMUND BARSS

LATIN MASTER IN THE HOTCHKISS SCHOOL

UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

NEW YORK · BOSTON · NEW ORLEANS

1905

597595
C

COPYRIGHT, 1903, BY
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING CO.

2825

PREFACE

The present volume, while it has been prepared to follow the author's WRITING LATIN—BOOK ONE, has such **completeness** that it can be used with pupils who have not studied the introductory book. This is made possible by the addition of a summary of the grammatical principles employed in BOOK ONE, to which reference is made by number in the Exercises.

The lessons are arranged in **groups**, following somewhat more elaborately the system employed in BOOK ONE, in which an effort was made to bring together in an orderly fashion things which, from the standpoint of English, are naturally associated, but which are apt to be confounded when studied separately.

As in BOOK ONE, therefore, the **order of subjects**, while systematic, is unconventional, presenting at an early stage the simpler and essential aspects of some constructions which are often deferred to a later period than their importance demands. Thus, **Indirect Discourse** is attacked at the outset, in order that much practice in writing its simpler forms may at length produce that familiarity with its point of view which will make the more complicated varieties intelligible. With the same object, a group of lessons has been early introduced on the **Latin Equivalents of the English Infinitive**. Beginning with uses identical in the two languages, this subject is developed with reference to the Latin parallels for the English infinitive according to its use as noun, adjective, or adverb.

The **Hints** are intended to interpret practically the technical language of the grammar, which they supplement but do not supersede.

In cases where a sentence may be written in several different ways, as in expressions of purpose, participles and their equivalents, and the like, provision is made for the systematic writing of such sentences in all regular ways, the Exercises being correspondingly shortened, and the proper constructions indicated with sufficient plainness.

The Vocabulary is for the most part selected from words appearing most frequently in the Orations of Cicero usually read in schools, and from Caesar; Cicero furnishing the largest number.

Practice in the writing of continuous prose is given by short paragraphs appended to each Exercise, and by the Review Exercises which close each group. The author ventures here to express his belief, founded on experience, that, in general, time is wasted in the attempt to have pupils write exercises for which they must seek the vocabulary through a considerable portion of text. The Exercises of this book accordingly, while composed to accompany the reading of Cicero and Caesar and to reinforce the knowledge of words and phrases derived from such reading, have all their words catalogued in the General Vocabulary.

The author is indebted to his friends for the long-suffering with which they have listened to the tale of his plans and problems, and for the sympathetic criticism and effectual aid which have given him assurance when in doubt and cleared his path of many obstacles. In particular, he would gratefully acknowledge the counsel and help which he has received from Professor Lodge at all stages of the work.

J. Edmund Barss.

The Hotchkiss School,
Lakeville, Conn., *April* 28, 1903.

INTRODUCTION

In writing Latin, the first object should be to secure grammatical exactness. It is always worth while to verify everything about which there may be the slightest doubt; and it is needless to say that nothing diminishes the difficulties of the work so rapidly as the practice of this careful scrutiny.

The next matter of importance is the order of words.[1] The student should strive to obtain clearness by reading his own Latin over, and seeing if he can understand it. Verbs should regularly stand last in their several clauses; it is then easy to give variety by occasionally varying this order.

In compound and complex sentences, the best results will be obtained by avoiding an involved sentence-structure until one has acquired some degree of skill in writing Latin. Thus, if we had to translate the sentence

The townsmen sent envoys to Caesar to beg him for peace,

it would be safer to write

[Oppidānī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt] [quī pācem ab eō peterent],

in which the two clauses are perfectly distinct, rather than

Oppidānī lēgātōs ad Caesarem [quī pācem ab eō peterent] mīsērunt,

where the purpose clause is contained, as a sort of parenthesis, in the main clause. Furthermore, in the last sentence there are two verbs standing together at the end, which is a serious defect. This may be avoided by arranging the clauses

[1] Read carefully G. 671–679; A. 343–346; B. 348–353; H. 663–685.

as in the first example, or by placing some other word than the verb at the end of the first clause. Thus, the last example might be made to end

. . . quī pācem peterent ab eō mīsērunt.

Latin frequently employs the relative where English prefers a demonstrative, even when there is a subordinating conjunction. The relative must always precede the conjunction. Thus,

Lentulus was brought in, [*and*] *when he saw the Gauls, he was alarmed*

is best written

Intrōductus est Lentulus, ***quī cum*** **Gallōs vīdit, perterritus est.**

After one has acquired the ability to write clearly and in a normal Latin order, he may give attention to emphasis and style, combining with study of the grammatical rules the reading aloud of Latin with which he is familiar, and the retranslation into Latin of English renderings which have been written out and laid aside for a little time.

WRITING LATIN

BOOK TWO

Section I. Indirect Sentences.

Lesson I. Questions, Direct and Indirect.
Lesson II. Statements, Direct and Indirect.
Lesson III. Personal and Impersonal Constructions. Verbs of Hoping and Promising.
Lesson IV. Review.

LESSON I

QUESTIONS, DIRECT AND INDIRECT.

The references are to the grammars of Gildersleeve and Lodge (G.), Allen and Greenough (A.), Bennett (B.), and Harkness (H.).

Direct Simple Questions[1]: G. 450–452, 454–456, 462–464; A. 171. b, 210. 1, a, c, e, f; B. 162. 1, 2, a), b), c); H. 377. 4, 378 and 2.

Direct Disjunctive Questions: G. 458, 459; A. 211. Remark, and d; B. 162. 4; H. 380 and 1.

Indirect Questions. Sequence of Tenses: G. 460. 1, (a), 2, 461, 467, 509–511, 514, 515; A. 210. 2, 334 with Headnote and a, 285. 1, 2, 286 and Remark, 287. b, 1–3; B. 300. 1, a),

[1] Direct questions employing the subjunctive are treated in connection with the other independent uses of that mood.

Note, b), Note, 4, a, 267. 1–3, 269 and 3; H. 649. II, 1, 2, 650. 1, 2, 651. 1, 542–545.

HINTS.

Sequence of Tenses in Indirect Questions. Note the following points:

(a) In any given dependent clause which takes the subjunctive, only TWO tenses are possible. The problem is to determine which one of these we shall use.

(b) In writing indirect questions, the tense used in English is a sufficient guide, with one exception.

Thus,

(1) *I do not know why he* { *laughs* / *is laughing* / *does laugh* }, **nesciō quid rīdeat** (pres. subj.);

(2) *I did not know why he was laughing,* **nescīvī quid rīdēret** (impf. subj.);

(3) *I do not know why he* { *laughed* (a) / *has laughed* (b) / *was laughing* (c) / *had laughed* (d) }, **nesciō quid rīserit** (perf. subj.);

(4) *I did not know why he had laughed,* **nescīvī quid rīsisset** (plup. subj.).

In sentences (c) and (d) of the third form we must be on our guard against using the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive; the PERFECT being the only tense which can be used to express past time when the main verb is primary.

(c) Note the various English equivalents for the periphrastic future. Thus,

Interrogāvī quid factūrus essēs

might mean *I asked what you* { ***were going to do,*** / ***were about to do,*** / ***were likely to do,*** / ***intended to do,*** / ***would do,*** etc.

EXERCISE I.

1. What in-the-world are you doing? 2. I don't know what you are doing. 3. I didn't know what you were doing. 4. What plan (**12**)[1] have they formed? 5. I will tell you (**6**) what plan they have formed. 6. Did you not know what plan they had formed? 7. How long will you endure this? 8. Do you know how long they are going to stand this? 9. Didn't you ask me how long they would endure the effrontery of this [man]? 10. Are you more disturbed by the people's alarm (**28**), or by the armed force on the Palatine at night (nightly garrison of the Palatine)? 11. Is-it-possible-that (**num**) these children do nothing at all against their will? 12. Didn't you ask me whether they did nothing against their will? 13. Do you believe me (**6. b**) or not? 14. Why do you ask whether I believe you or not? 15. I asked you, not whether you believed me, but whether you intended to listen to (would hear) me. 16. Those who do nothing against their will do not know what true liberty is. 17. We shall be asked if (**num**) we know what true liberty is. 18. We shall be asked whether we ever knew what true liberty was. 19. What harm will the country suffer? 20. Did you ask what harm the country had suffered, or [what harm it] would suffer?

CONNECTED PROSE.

Cicero the consul asked Catiline in the senate (**15. a**) whether he was utterly indifferent to (was nothing moved by) the people's alarm. Catiline said many things to him in reply (to whom Catiline replied many [things]), and

[1] Figures in parentheses () refer to the summary of the syntax of Book One, found on p. 108; words in parentheses are explanatory; words in square brackets [] should be omitted in translating.

asked what decree the senate had passed (what the senate had decreed) against him (**sē**). But the consul could not endure such effrontery (which effrontery the consul did not endure), and drove Catiline (**ille**) from the city.

LESSON II

STATEMENTS, DIRECT AND INDIRECT.

Moods in Indirect Discourse: G. 648–650; A. 335, 336. 1, 2; B. 313, 314. 1; H. 641, 642.

Tense of the Infinitive: G. 530, 531; A. 336. A, 288. f; B. 270. 1, a), b), c), 3, a, 317 and a; H. 617–620.

Tense of the Subjunctive: G. 509. 1, 510 and Remark; A. 336. B, 285. 1, 2, 286 and Remark, (a), (b), 287. b; B. 267. 1–3, 268. 1, 2, 269. 1, 3; H. 542–545.

Pronouns: G. 520–522, 660, 1–4; A. 195. 1, 196. a, 1, 2, h, i; B. 244. 1, I, II, a, 5; H. 645 and 1.

HINTS.

Indirect Discourse. English has two forms of indirect quotation:

(a) *We know **that this is** true,* and
(b) *We know **this to be** true.*

Latin employs only one of these, the second. Thus,

Scīmus hōc *esse* vērum.

The easiest and surest way to write sentences of the indirect form is to recast them in the form of (b), above. In this way the second sentence of Exercise II becomes

*The consul says himself **to be afraid,*** etc.,

which can be translated directly into Latin.

Tense of the Infinitive. The present infinitive of Latin

must sometimes be used to translate what in English requires a past tense. Thus,

He said that he was tired,

when changed according to the suggestion of the preceding paragraph, becomes

He said himself to be tired,

which is in Latin

Dīxit sē dēfessum ***esse.***

To make this still clearer, suppose that we had

Dīxit sē dēfessum ***fuisse.***

This would be, literally,

He said himself to have been tired,

or, in more natural English,

He said that he had been tired.

When in doubt, imagine yourself as saying the thing which is quoted, heard, etc., and use a present, perfect, or future infinitive, according as the time of your verb is present, past, or future. Thus, in the first case, the speaker must have said

I am tired, **Dēfessus sum;**

while in the second he said

$$I \left\{ \begin{matrix} was \\ have\ been \\ had\ been \end{matrix} \right\} tired, \qquad \text{Dēfessus} \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{eram,} \\ \text{fuī,} \\ \text{fueram.} \end{matrix} \right\}$$

Finally, remember that "will," "would," "going to" and the like, are signs of the future infinitive in Latin. Thus,

He said that he would come,
Dīxit sē ***ventūrum*** **(*esse*).**

The Subjunctive. This need give very little trouble. The thing to remember is that the law of sequence allows only TWO tenses in any given case, and to select the one which comes nearest. Thus, if we have to translate

I see that you know what I was plotting,

we cannot render *was plotting* by the imperfect subjunctive, because *know* is not a secondary tense. We therefore select the only tense of the subjunctive which can express past time when the leading verb is primary, namely the perfect, and write the sentence thus:

Videō tē sentīre quae *cōgitāverim*.

Pronouns. In sentences beginning "*He said that he,*" "*They knew that they,*" and the like, the translation of the second pronoun may be troublesome. If the second pronoun refers to the same person as the first, meaning, "*A said that A,*" "*B knew that B,*" etc., the reflexive **sē** must be used. If the second pronoun refers to some other person, and means "*A said that X,*" "*B knew that Y,*" etc., use the accusative of **is, ea, id.**

Thus,

They said that they would not go.

may be **Negāvērunt *sē* itūrōs,**

or **Negāvērunt *eōs* itūrōs.**

The first means that the speakers themselves refused to go; the second, that they reported the refusal of others.

EXERCISE II.

1. I am afraid of those who are defending this man. 2. The consul says that he is afraid of those who are defending this man. 3. He said that he was afraid of those who were defending this man. 4. I was not accusing the man whom the tribune was defending. 5. He says that he was not (say . . . not = **negō**) accusing the men whom the tribunes were defending. 6. He said that he had not accused the man whom the tribunes were defending—had defended. 7. I shall accuse the man whom you are going to defend (See Hints to Lesson I). 8. I say that I shall accuse the man whom you are going to defend. 9. I said that I should

accuse the man whom you were going to defend. 10. The consul will kill the man who says (shall have said) that. 11. Do you believe that the consul will kill the man who says (shall have said) that? 12. Didn't you believe that the consul would execute the man who said (should have said) that? 13. The man who does (cf. No. 10) this will be executed by the consul (**24**). 14. We hear that the man who does (cf. No. 11) this will be executed by the consul. 15. The consul acknowledged that the man who did (cf. No. 12) this would be put-to-death by the soldiers. 16. He does not know that the eyes of many behold him. 17. He does not know whose eyes behold him. 18. Do you realize whose eyes beheld you? 19. Do you realize that the eyes of the consul, whom you say you do not fear, behold you? 20. Did he realize that he was beheld by the eyes of the consul, whom he had said that he would assassinate?

CONNECTED PROSE.

Cicero said to Catiline that he [not][1] only should not put him to death, but that he was not even going to arrest him. For [he said] that he never had found any one like Catiline (**7**), nor any one who believed that what Catiline (**ille**) had done had been done rightly.

LESSON III

PERSONAL AND IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION. VERBS OF HOPING AND PROMISING.

Personal and Impersonal Construction: G. 528; A. 330. a, 1, 2, b, 1; B. 332. a)–d) and Note; H. 611. 1, 2, and Notes.

Verbs of Hoping and Promising: G. 423. Remark 5; A. 330. f.; B. 331. I; H. 619. 1.

[1] G. 482. 5, Note 1; A. (old edition) 209. a, 1; (new edition) 217. e; B. 343. 2, a; H. 656. 3.

HINTS.

Compound Infinitives: Remember that after the personal passive, a compound infinitive form (future active or perfect passive) is put in the nominative, agreeing with the subject of the leading verb. Otherwise, of course, it would agree with its own subject accusative. Thus,

(Personal) *They are said to have tried,*
Dīcuntur cōnātī esse.

(Impersonal) *It was said that they had tried,*
Dictum est eōs cōnātōs esse.

EXERCISE III.

1. The horsemen are said to have set out early-in-the-morning. 2. It was said that the horsemen had set out early in the morning. 3. The knights promised to set out. 4. The knights hoped to set out early in the morning. 5. We promise to send Roman knights to you (**5. a**) a little (**25**) before daybreak. 6. He hoped to free the city from fear (**16. b**). 7. Do you expect that Catiline will go into exile? 8. Is it not said that Catiline will go into exile at (to) Marseilles? (**5. a**). 9. Who believed that Cicero did not hope to free the city from fear? 10. The consul is said to be keeping a sharp lookout (to look out sharply) for the welfare of the commonwealth. 11. It was said that the consul would keep a sharp lookout for the country's safety. 12. The consul promised to keep a sharp lookout for the safety of us all. 13. I asked him whether on the night before last he had been at-the-house-of a man who was an enemy to the commonwealth, or not. 14. But he answered that he hoped I would not ask this (question) again. 15. Then I promised not to ask him where he had been on that night. 16. He is said to have replied that he would not tell where he had been. 17. It was said that he was going to reply that on

that night he had been at-the-house-of a man who had promised to murder the consul. 18. It was said that the consul did not believe he would be murdered by that scoundrel. 19. It is believed that he said he hoped to murder the consul. 20. These knights are said to have murdered the consul, to whom they were sent early in the morning.

CONNECTED PROSE.

Two Roman knights are said to have promised to kill Cicero a little before daybreak. Accordingly the consul fortified and secured his house with stronger (greater) guards. Early in the morning those very [men] came who he (**ille**) had hoped would come; [and] therefore (wherefore) he offered thanks to Jupiter Stator who had saved him (**ipse**) from (**ex**) peril of death.

LESSON IV

REVIEW.

EXERCISE IV.

1 Caesar is said to have gone-from the winter quarters which he had established among the Belgians, into Italy. 2 We hear that his lieutenants, whom he had placed-in-charge-of the legions (**6. d**), built that winter (**18**) as many ships as possible and repaired the old [ones]. 3 The rigging (those [things] with which ships are equipped) was (pl.) brought from Spain. 4 Caesar said to the lieutenants that he was going to set out for Illyricum, where he had heard that the region bordering on the province (**7**) was being ravaged by the enemy. 5 He promised, therefore, to demand soldiers from the states (dat.); 6 he hoped that they would gather in (into) a particular place on the appointed day,

7 But the Pirusti, to whom (6) this circumstance was reported, immediately sent envoys to him (5. a). These represent to him that none of those things was done with the public consent, and promise to atone for the wrong by every means.

9 Accordingly Caesar demanded hostages of them (dat.). It was done as he had commanded; hostages were brought to [him] precisely-at the time (dies); Caesar appointed [gave] arbitrators between the states, who assessed damages and settled the penalty.

Section II. Latin Equivalents for the English Infinitive.

Lesson	V.	Infinitive as Subject and as Object.
Lesson	VI.	Final Sentences, Pure and Relative.
Lesson	VII.	Complementary Final Sentences. Construction after Verbs of Fearing.
Lesson	VIII.	Expression of Purpose by Gerund and Gerundive.
Lesson	IX.	Remaining Uses of Gerund and Gerundive. The Supines.
Lesson	X.	Review.

LESSON V

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND AS OBJECT.

Infinitive as Subject: G. 419–422, 377. 3, 535 ; A. 270. 1, a. 1, b, 221. c ; B. 327. 1, 2, 330, 209. 1, a ; H. 615. 1, 2, 457. 3.

Infinitive as Object (Complementary): G. 423. 1, 2, Remarks 3 and 6 ; A. 271. b, c, 330. B, 2 ; B. 328. 1, 331. II–IV, VI, 332 complete ; H. 607. 1, 2, 614.

HINTS.

Difference between Latin and English Uses of the Infinitive. By analyzing English sentences containing the infinitive we find it has the following uses :

1. Noun use.
   - Subject of a verb, ***To do this*** | ***is folly.***
   - Object of a verb, ***I like*** | ***to read.***
   - Appòsition, ***This is pleasant*** | ***to find you*** *at home.*

2. Adverb use. { Qualifies a verb, *We came* | ***to see you.***
Qualifies an adjective, *This is* ***easy*** | ***to do.***

3. Adjective use. { Qualifies a noun or pronoun, *Some* ***books*** are ***to be tasted.***

In classical Latin prose the infinitive is, generally speaking, used only as a noun.

In this lesson we have examples of such noun infinitives as are the same in English and Latin. In the lessons which follow we shall learn the Latin equivalents for English adjective and adverb infinitives.

The infinitive of indirect discourse is, of course, a noun; being, with its subject-accusative and modifiers, either the subject or the object of a verb of declaring, perceiving, and the like. Thus,

Object. **Sciō | hōc vērum esse,**
I know | this-to-be-true.

Subject. **Dictum est | tē abīsse,**
It was said that you had gone away,

(Literally, *You-to-have-gone-away | was said*).

Infinitive as Subject. It should be remembered that the verbal noun in *-ing* is often used in English in place of the subject-infinitive proper. Thus,

Dulce est *rīdēre*

may be the equivalent of either

(*It*) ***is pleasant to laugh,***
or ***To laugh is pleasant,***
or ***Laughing is pleasant.***

The same thing is true of the object-infinitive. Thus,

Ambulāre amāmus

may be used to render either

We like to walk,
or ***We like walking.***

Infinitive as Object. Because of the confusion between certain infinitive and subjunctive constructions in Latin, it is desirable to memorize the subjoined list of common verbs which regularly take an infinitive as their object or complement. Most of these are required in the exercise which follows:

volō, *wish, be willing.*	**audeō**, *dare, venture.*
nōlō, *not wish, be unwilling.*	**vereor**, *fear.*
cupiō, *desire.*	**dubitō**, *hesitate.*
mālō, *prefer.*	**parō**, *prepare, make ready.*
	cōnor, *try, attempt.*
possum, *can, be able.*	**incipiō**, *begin.* / **coepī**, *began.*
dēbeō, *ought.*	**dēsistō**, *cease, stop.*
cōnsuēscō, *become accustomed.*	**iubeō**, *bid, command.*
soleō, *be accustomed, be used.*	**vetō**, *forbid.*
cōnstituō, *determine, decide.*	**sinō**, *permit, allow.*
cōgō, *compel.*	**patior**, *suffer, permit.*

EXERCISE V.

1. Is it not a crime to assail the entire commonwealth? 2. Are you not ashamed (**14. b**), Catiline, to assail the commonwealth? 3. Was he ashamed of having assailed (to have assailed) his own country? 4. This [man] was willing to threaten the whole of Italy with (call the whole [of] Italy to) destruction. 5. We cannot tell why he did it. 6. The consul dared to bid the enemy go out from the city. 7. He had not yet decided to go out. 8. Early in the morning we shall prepare to drive the rest of the band out. 9. You have never tried to do what (that which) was the first [thing to do]. 10. Catiline asked the consul whether he wished him to go out. 11. Are you afraid to ask me where (not **ubi**; see Vocab.) I command you to go? 12. They seemed

to hesitate to threaten all Italy with destruction (see No. 4). 13. I can't believe that this is true. 14. We were never accustomed to ask his advice. 15. I have always been accustomed to take thought for the common safety. 16. He never ceased calling (to call) the citizens. 17. I desire to cease from my attempt (**16. b**). 18. He neither dared to put the rest of the band to death, nor was he able [to do so]. 19. Do you know why he was unwilling to tell what he was doing?[1] 20. I for-my-part believe that he is afraid to confess that he assailed the entire commonwealth.

CONNECTED PROSE.

The consul said in the senate that he did not yet venture to do what was the first [thing to do], and-therefore (**quā rē**) would do something milder and more useful for the common safety. [He said that] he was not able to drive the rest of the band out of the city, but that he had not hesitated to warn Catiline's companions frequently.

LESSON VI

FINAL SENTENCES, PURE AND RELATIVE.

Pure Final Sentences: G. 544. I, 545. 1–3; A. 317. 1, a, b, c, Remark; B. 282. 1, a, c, d; H. 568. 3, 5, 6.

Relative Final Sentences: G. 630; A. 317. 2; B. 282. 2, a; H. 590 and 1.

HINTS.

Final Sentences in English. In the sentence

He left all to save his country,

notice that *to save*

(a) is adverbial, modifying *left*, and

[1] G. 517. Remark 1; A. 287. i; B. 268. 7. b); H. 547. 1.

(b) may be replaced by a clause beginning "in order that," without affecting the sense. Thus,

*He left all **in order that** he might save his country,*

which becomes in Latin,

Omnia relīquit ut patriam servāret.

This furnishes a test by which to distinguish the English infinitive expressing purpose from other uses of the infinitive. Remember that the infinitive must not be used to express purpose in Latin.

Relative Final Sentences. The difference between a final sentence introduced by a conjunction and one introduced by a relative is largely a matter of emphasis. Thus, if we analyze these two ways of expressing *He sent a certain man to fire the town,* we get

(a) **Quendam mīsit**
ut oppidum incenderet,

and (b) **Quendam mīsit**
quī oppidum incenderet.

In (a) **ut . . . incenderet** is adverbial, modifying and so emphasizing **mīsit.** In (b) **quī . . . incenderet** is adjectival, modifying and so emphasizing **quendam.** In (a) the dependent clause merely tells us what the purpose was in sending. In (b) we think of the purpose in close connection with the one who was to carry it out. In general, the relative form is more common when the purpose can be referred to an antecedent in this way.

Tense of the Subjunctive. Except in verbs which, like **ōdī** and **meminī,** lack the present stem, or, like **cōgnōscō** and **cōnsuēscō,** have different meanings in the perfect and present systems, only the present and imperfect subjunctive should be used in final sentences. In the case of these

defective and "preterite" verbs, the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used instead of the present and imperfect.

EXERCISE VI.

Starred sentences should be written twice, once with **ut** or **nē** and once with the relative.

*1. Catiline is coming to Rome (**5. b**) to get ready a band of scoundrels. *2. Some of them (of whom some) have been sent to kill the consul. *3. Those by whom the consul is said to have been killed committed many crimes afterwards, in order to please their commander (**6. b**), Catiline (**1**). 4. How many crimes have we committed, that we might accomplish this very thing! 5. How many enemies has the consul made (**suscipiō**) that Catiline might accomplish nothing (that . . . nothing = lest . . . anything, **nē . . . quid**). *6. He sent Roman knights to murder Cicero, the consul. 7. The accomplices of this scoundrel will be killed, in accordance with a decree (abl.) of the senate, that the commonwealth may be freed from fear. 8. "Therefore," he said,[1] "we have done all these things, that you might the more easily understand what concerns the highest interests-of-the-state." 9. Now he does not hesitate to commit many crimes, that his accomplices may not suffer punishment. 10. But to how many dangers has the consul exposed himself, that he might punish just-that-man (**ipse**)! *11. I for-my-part will send trusty slaves to find out what these men are trying to accomplish. *12. Then, perhaps, you will understand that I have been preparing a band of trusty men, in order to save the commonwealth (for the relative form say "through whom I might save"). 13. To check Catiline's attempts, they will

[1] **Inquit**—the proper word to use when quoting the exact words of a speaker instead of representing them by indirect discourse. The pl. is **inquiunt**. For other forms, see Vocabulary.

kill as many [of] (12) his accomplices as they can find. 14. "I was doing this," he said, "that my country might last forever." 15. A war, the greatest and most cruel within (after) the memory of man, will be waged, that the commonwealth may suffer no harm (lest . . . take anything of harm, 12).

CONNECTED PROSE.

He said that he was now coming to the things (**illa**) which concerned the highest interests of the state. Then he asked Catiline whether the light [of day] could be pleasant to him, who knew (subj.) that there was no one who did not know that he had got ready a band in order to kill the chief men of the state.

LESSON VII

COMPLEMENTARY FINAL SENTENCES. SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER VERBS OF FEARING.

Complementary Final Sentences: G. 544. II, 546. 1, 2, Remarks 2, 3, 548, 549; A. 329, 331. a, b, 1, 2, Note, c–e, 1, 2, h; B. 294, 295. 1, a, 2, 3, a, 4, 5, a, 8, 296. 1, a; H. 563, 564. I, II, 565. 1–5, 566, 568. 2, 6–8.

Verbs of Fearing: G. 550. 1, 2; A. 331. f, Note, Remark; B. 296. 2, a; H. 567. 1–4.

HINTS.

Complementary Final Sentences. Review the list of verbs which may be followed by an infinitive, given on page 19. Subjoined is a list of very common verbs which require the subjunctive with **ut** or **nē**. These should be memorized.

petō, *ask* (request or demand).
postulō, *ask* (as a right).
rogō, *ask* (in any way).
hortor, *urge, encourage.*
moneō, *advise, warn.*
persuādeō, *persuade.*
impediō, *hinder.*
imperō, *command.*

It should be remembered that these lists are typical, not complete. Furthermore, there are verbs in each list which sometimes are followed by other constructions than those indicated. For instance, just as in English we may say either, *I wish you to go, I wish you would go,* or *I wish that you would go,* so in Latin we find, besides **volō tē īre,** both **volō eās** and **volō ut eās.**

Verbs of Hindering. Whereas we say in English

Why do you hinder me from going away?

the form for Latin is

Why do you hinder me that I may not go away?
Cūr mē impedīs *quō minus* (or ***nē***) **abeam?**

Do not forget that **prohibeō,** *prevent,* generally prefers the infinitive.

EXERCISE VII.

1. Who will command[1] us (**6. b**) to leave the city? 2. Some had already asked you to withdraw to-some-place. 3. For my part, my friend, I urge you to stay at Rome, and not go away to-another-place. 4. Will he not be able to persuade them (**6. b**) to go to-the-same-place? 5. [It is] by you, especially, [that] I have been hindered from leaving the city. 6. "Do you wish," said he, "to hinder me from going into exile?" 7. The Belgae prevented the Germans from entering their territory. 8. For they were afraid that they (**illī,** showing that there is a change of subject) would lay waste their fields. 9. "But," said they (**inquiunt**), "the Germans are afraid that they will not be able to return home" (**5**). 10. I do not wish to hinder you from withdrawing from your country. 11. The senate decreed that the consuls should see to it that the commonwealth suffer no

[1] Write with both **iubeō** and **imperō.**

harm. 12. The consul said that he had moved (**versor**) in-the-midst-of many dangers, the more easily to compel Catiline to leave the city. 13. The senators whom he has appointed for massacre will urge him to keep away from (be-without) his country (**16. b**). 14. He has given me this advice (advised me this)—not to prevent him from leaving. 15. Why did you say you were afraid that I should not have a sufficient force (**12**)? 16. Didn't you compel the enemy to withdraw? 17. The immortal gods will prevent Catiline from being able to do the city any harm (harm anything to the city, **6. b, c**). 18. I am afraid that the consul will not dare command him to depart from Rome (**16. a**). 19. Now are you afraid lest he assail the entire fabric-of-the-state (**rēs pūblica**)? 20. The general urged his soldiers not to hesitate to hinder the enemy from crossing the river.

CONNECTED PROSE.

"Wretched man," said the consul,[1] "are you not afraid lest all these lay violent hands (violence and hands) on you (dat.)? For who will prevent them from slaying you, by whom they have full often been appointed for massacre? Wherefore I counsel you to go into exile at once."

[1] **Inquit** does not begin a sentence. The best order for the above would be **Cōnsul "miser," inquit, "homō,"** etc. This gives a convenient rule of order: subject, then one or more words of the quotation, then **inquit**, then the remainder of the quotation.

Test on 4-5-6, 7.

LESSON VIII

EXPRESSION OF PURPOSE BY GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

Nature of Gerund and Gerundive: G. 425–427 and Remarks 3–5; A. 295–297; B. 338, 339; H. 621, 623. 1, 624.

Accusative with *Ad*: G. 432; A. 300 and Note, 318. b; B. 338. 3, 339. 1–4; H. 628.

Accusative with Special Verbs: G. 430; A. 294. d; B. 337. 8, b), 2; H. 622.

Genitive with *Causā* and *Grātiā*: G. 428. Remarks 1 and 2; A. 298. a, c; B. 338. 1, c); H. 475. 2, 626. 1–3.

HINTS.

English has nearly literal equivalents for four of the five methods given for expressing purpose in Latin. Thus,

English.	Latin.
Tribunes were appointed	**Tribūnī creātī sunt**
(a) ***that they might protect the commons,***	***ut* plēbem dēfend*erent*,**
(b) ***who were to protect the commons,***	***quī* plēbem dēfend*erent*,**
(c) ***for protecting the commons,***	***ad* plēbem dēfend*endam*,**
(d) ***for the sake of protecting the commons.***	**plēbis dēfend*endae causā*.**

The use of the gerundive in agreement with the object of certain verbs to express purpose can be readily understood by attention to the literal rendering, although the English is awkward. Thus,

(e) **Agrōs iīs colendōs dedit**

is literally *He gave them fields to-be-tilled,*
that is, *He gave them fields to till.*

Genitive with *Causā*. Remember that **causā** and **grātiā** *must* always FOLLOW the genitive.

EXERCISE VIII.

In this Exercise the letters a, b, c, d, e, in parentheses, refer to the models, similarly lettered, in the Hints to this Lesson. Each sentence is to be written in all the ways indicated by the letters prefixed.

1. (a, b, c, d.) One commander was chosen for conducting all these wars. 2. (a, d) "When," they say, "shall we meet to settle these matters (things)? 3. (a, c) Did not all good citizens assemble to hear [of] Catiline's infamous crimes? 4. (a, b, d) A man of the greatest influence (**11**) has said that we ought to do these things in order to protect our native land (the relative form is literally "*by which* we might protect," etc.). 5. (a, b, d) Do you think he will enter the city in order to butcher the citizens? 6. (a, b, d) Then surely they will leave the city to save themselves. 7. (a, b, c, d) This great (this so great) war, about which we spoke above, was waged in order to check those infamous purposes of yours. (For a and b the verb of the dependent clause must be in the passive. The relative has the same construction as in No. 4, its antecedent being the word for *war*.) 8. (a, b, d) Who hesitates to undergo dangers, that he may win praise? 9. And yet we did not (and yet . . . not = **neque tamen**) desire danger to threaten the country, in order that we might receive (be affected with) honor on account of your courage (**28**). 10. (b) None were found to kill the consul. 11. (e) The general will have[1] those ships repaired which were shattered by the storm. 12. (e) The consuls contracted for setting up the statue. 13. (e) [Those] who wished to be considered friends-of-the-people used to give the commons bread to eat. 14. (e) We shall leave the camp to the enemy to plunder. 15. (e) To whom has Catiline assigned the city for burning?

[1] **cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (literally, *take care of*).

CONNECTED PROSE.

The senators who were said to have been assigned to Cethegus to butcher decreed that the consul should stay in the city in order to save the lives of the citizens. He (**is**), therefore, gave the walls to trusty men to defend.

LESSON IX

REMAINING USES OF GERUND AND GERUNDIVE. THE SUPINES.

Genitive: G. 428; A. 298 and b; B. 338. 1, a), b), 339. 1–5; H. 626.

Accusative: G. 432; A. 300 and Note; B. 338. 3; H. 628.

Ablative: G. 431, 433; A. 301; B. 338. 4, a), b), 5; H. 629.

Passive Periphrastic: G. 251. 1, 2; A. 294. a–c, Note; B. 337. 8, a), b), 1); H. 621. 1, 2.

Dative of the Agent: G. 354, 355 and Remark; A. 232 and Note; B. 189. 1, a; H. 431 and 1.

Supines: G. 434–436; A. 302, 303 and Remark; B. 340, complete; H. 633, 635 and 1.

HINTS.

Passive Periphrastic. English sentences with "must" and "have to" must be recast in a passive form before rendering in Latin. Thus,

$$I \left\{ \begin{matrix} \textit{have to} \\ \textit{must} \\ \textit{should} \end{matrix} \right\} \textit{read a book}$$

becomes

For me, there's a book to-be-read, **Mihi liber legendus est.**

Supines. To the list of models given under the Hints to Lesson VIII we may now add one for the Accusative Supine. Thus,

(f) *You had sent them to me to pay-their-respects,* **Eōs ad mē salūtātum mīserās.**

The ablative supine is used in the case of a few verbs to define in what respect something is easy or difficult, pleasant or unpleasant, right or wrong. English has here an infinitive, or *in* with the verbal in *-ing*. Thus,

Id *dictū* quam *factū* facilius est,
That is easier in the telling than in the doing,
or, ***That is easier to tell than to do.***

EXERCISE IX.

1. Who, I say (**inquam**), was not eager to hear (desirous of hearing) Cicero's speeches? 2. Do you know what reason there is for making this demand (of demanding this)?[1] 3. He used this time (**27**) for preparing [for] a new war. 4. They thought two years sufficient for completing these arrangements (things). 5. What do you hope to accomplish by making this demand (cf. No. 2)? 6. The time was too short for fortifying the camp. 7. Catiline must be put to death by the severest [form of] punishment. 8. Must we not give the most careful attention to (hear most carefully) these speeches? 9. We ought to feel most grateful to the immortal gods. 10. I must speak of the prestige of a very great (**summus**) man. 11. How do you think you should feel that this scoundrel has lived so long (with what mind . . . [it] must be borne . . . this scoundrel to have lived)? 12. It

[1] A prepositional phrase modifying a noun and not in apposition with it regularly requires the genitive when turned into Latin. See G. 360. 1, Remark 1; A. 213, 217; B. 194; H. 439.

is hard to say why we are so terribly afraid of him. 13. (a, b, c, d, f) Scouts came to announce that the enemy (pl.) was at hand. 14. The general himself will show us what is best to do. 15. I must write about everything (all things) which you will wish to know. 16. Must not these scoundrels be put to death? 17. (a, b, c, d, f) Envoys came to beg peace of (ā) Caesar. 18. The man wasn't much mistaken, was he, who said that these things were not pleasant to hear? 19. It was hard to see whether the enemy were beating or being beaten. 20. Must not the soldiers arrest him at once —something (id) which according to the custom of our ancestors ought to have been done[1] long ago?

CONNECTED PROSE.

Cicero, in (by) a speech which he made (habeō) in the Comitium, said that the man (is) who had tried to lay violent hands on the consul must suffer the death penalty. For [he said] it was easy to see that a man who was an enemy to the commonwealth could not be considered a citizen.

LESSON X

REVIEW.

A. He is said to be [a man] of the greatest influence (11). 2. We were not asked to stay. 3. I have to write two letters now. 4. The war in that province was intrusted to a stripling to manage. 5. They hoped to come to see you. 6. It is yours to see to it that my deeds do not bring harm to me. 7. To conduct this war well is not an easy thing to do. 8. To promise is not always to perform. 9. It is [a] seemly [thing] to die for one's country. 10. I command

[1] G. 230; A. 276. a; B. 259. 4; H. 533. 1.

you to ask your friend to advise the citizens not to leave the city.

B. 1. The Helvetians suddenly began to harass our men. 2. Immediately Caesar led his forces up to the nearest hill, and sent cavalry to withstand the assault. 3. He intrusted the line to Labienus to draw up; he himself with two legions (17. a) rushed to the hilltop for the purpose of defending the camp, for he was afraid that they did not have a sufficient force for keeping the enemy off. 4. For a long time it was hard to see whether Romans or Gauls were getting the better of it. 5. At length, however, the enemy fled. 6. "Hail! Caesar, our commander," shout the soldiers. 7. "Who will be able to prevent you from gaining power (27) over the whole world (gen.)?"

Section III. Tendency and Result.

Lesson XI. Pure Consecutive Sentences. Final and Consecutive Sentences Contrasted.

Lesson XII. Complementary Consecutive Sentences.

Lesson XIII. Relative Sentences of Tendency, Cause, and Concession.

Lesson XIV. Review.

LESSON XI

PURE CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES. FINAL AND CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES CONTRASTED.

Pure Consecutive Sentences: G. 551. 2, I, 552. 1–3, Remarks 1, 3, 4, 298; A. 319. 1, Remark, a, d, 332. d; B. 284. 1, 3; H. 570. 1, 2, 595. 4.

Final and Consecutive Sentences Contrasted: G. 543. 1–4; A. 319. d, Remark; B. 282. 1, 284. 1; H. 568, 570.

Sequence of Tenses: G. 513; A. 287. c; B. 268. 6, 7, a); H. 550.

HINTS.

Tantum abest ut . . . ut. This expression is best understood by observing its literal meaning. Thus,

Tantum abest ut tē amem, ut nēminem magis contemnam

is literally

So far away (i.e. so remote from the truth) *is it that I love you, that I despise no one more,*

or, more freely,

So far from loving you (or, *so far from its being true that I love you*), *there is no one whom I despise more.*

(The first of these **ut** clauses is often classed as complementary. See Lesson XII.)

EXERCISE XI.

1. He was so terribly afraid of you that he has gone into exile. 2. I spoke these very [words], that he might think-of exile. 3. I have fortified my house, that that scoundrel might not be able to harm me. 4. The house has been so secured that you cannot harm me. 5. You are not the man (**is**) to think of exile. 6. He said that such a tempest of unpopularity threatened that he wished to leave town (**urbs**). 7. Your crimes are so many and so great that no one can pardon you (**6. b**). 8. He will say all these things that no one may wish to pardon you. 9. No one was so bold as not to (that he did not) fear unpopularity. 10. All hope that he will go into exile so quickly that he shall be able (pres.) to harm no one. 11. He has promised to go into exile, that no one may fear lest he be harmed (**6. c**). 12. There was nothing so difficult that he did not try to accomplish it. 13. So far from its being true that they are going into exile, they are preparing to drive the consul himself out of the city. 14. So far from my being disturbed by Catiline's plans, I slept better last night (**18**) than [I did] the night before. 15. So far from being disturbed by his faults, he considers himself a very good citizen. 16. I wish you to go away from Rome, that we may never have to fear hereafter. 17. Who is so safe that he never has to fear? 18. I have now-for-a-long-time been keeping the hands of these men from you, that no one may be able to say that he has done you harm. 19. They

obeyed the consul so willingly that no one dared lay violent hands on him. 20. I can not drive Catiline from Rome without incurring (so that I do not incur) the dislike of many citizens.

CONNECTED PROSE.

You have said that I am not worried about (disturbed by) my faults. But I cannot hear you without being very much disturbed by your words; for I am afraid that no one hereafter will regard me except as an enemy to the commonwealth, wherefore I ask you to listen to (hear) what I am about to say.

LESSON XII

COMPLEMENTARY CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.

Verbs of Effecting: G. 553. 1, (2), 3; A. 319. 3, 332. a, 1, 2, e, f; B. 297. 1–3; H. 571. 1–3, 595. 3.

Verbs of Hindering: G. 555. 1, 2, Remarks, 556. Remark; A. 319. d, 332. g, Note 1, Remark, Note 2; B. 298 and b; H. 594. II, 595. 1, 2, 596. 2.

Licet, Necesse est, Oportet[1]: G. 553. 4, 535; A. 331. i, Notes 1, 3, 332. a, 2; B. 295. 6, 8; H. 564. II, 1, 615.

HINTS.

Verbs of Hindering. Latin sometimes regards a clause dependent on a verb meaning to hinder as final, sometimes as consecutive. For practical purposes, follow this rule:

(a) If the verb of hindering is *not* negatived, use **nē** or **quō minus** with the subjunctive.

(b) If the verb of hindering *is* negatived, use **quō minus** or **quīn** with the subjunctive. Thus,

[1] The subjunctive after these verbs is variously classed by different grammarians as final, coördinate, etc. The translation is not affected thereby.

(a) *I will hinder you from doing that,*
- (1) **Tē impediam *nē* id faciās.**
- (2) **Tē impediam** } ***quō minus*** **id faciās.**

(b) *I will not hinder you from doing that,*
- (3) **Tē *nōn* impediam** } ***quō minus*** **id faciās.**
- (4) **Tē *nōn* impediam *quīn* id faciās.**

Auxiliary Verbs. Subjoined is a table of the most usual modes of rendering May, Can, Must, and Ought in Latin.

(1) May (denoting *permission* or *freedom to perform* an act):

You may do this.
- (a) **Tē hōc facere | licet.**
- (b) **Tibi | hōc facere | licet.**
- (c) **Hōc faciās | licet.**

In (a), **tē** is the subject of **facere.** In (b), **tibi** is the indirect object of **licet.** In (c), **hōc faciās** is the subject of **licet.**

(2) Can:

You can do this, **Hōc facere potes.**

(3) Must:

You must do this.
- (a) **Hōc tibi faciendum est.**
- (b) 1. **Tē hōc facere** 2. **Hōc faciās** } **oportet.**
- (c) 1. **Tē hōc facere** 2. **Tibi hōc facere** 3. **Hōc faciās** } **necesse est.**

These do not mean precisely the same thing: (a) denotes that something is *to be done,* (b) that the given action is *fitting* under the circumstances, (c) that it is *inevitable.*

(4) Ought:

You ought to do this. { (a) **Hōc facere dēbēs.** (b) { 1. **Tē hōc facere** 2. **Hōc faciās** } **oportet.**

Of these, (a) denotes moral obligation; while (b), as in (3), denotes what is fitting under the circumstances. It is easy to see how fitness in some cases amounts to a necessity, as, for instance, we feel that we "must" speak grammatically. On the other hand, some things are fitting which are not binding: we "ought" to answer our friend's letter promptly, for politeness' sake; yet we postpone the task because we are too busy, or have nothing to say, or don't feel like writing at the moment. Thus we see why both "must" and "ought" are included among the meanings of **oportet.**

Past Tenses. Remember that with the verbs just mentioned the PRESENT tense of the infinitive is regularly used, the auxiliary being put in the past tense. Thus,

You ought to have done this. { (a) **Hōc facere *dēbuistī*.** (b) { 1. **Tē hōc facere** 2. **Hōc facerēs** } ***oportuit.***

EXERCISE XII.

1. I will make you understand what these men think (**sentiō**) about you. 2. I could not bring it to pass that the envoys should not hear what you were saying. 3. At length he will attain [his purpose] that the scoundrels suffer punishment. 4. It happened that I was writing a letter to that friend of (**dē**) whom you had spoken. 5. The outcome was that the Germans drove the Romans from their land. 6. There was the additional circumstance that very-many of our [men] had refused to enter so far into the territories of the enemy. 7. How exceedingly I think he ought to be

feared, you may understand from this (**28**). 8. All men must die sometime. 9. "We ought," he said, "to save the state, which is the common mother of us all." 10. Who doubted that Cicero would be able to save the country? 11. There is no doubt that they cannot accomplish those things which they desire. 12. I cannot but (not **sed**; see Vocab.) tell you how (in what manner) we escaped. 13. I ask you not to refuse to drive this scoundrel from the city. 14. We were warned not to attempt to hinder him from learning the consul's plans. 15. I could not have doubted that you would be my friend. 16. The consul ought not to have driven those good citizens from the city. 17. You ought to have compelled everybody to tell what they knew about this matter. 18. So far from wishing to hinder you from doing this, I hope that you will attain all [the ends] which you are striving-for. 19. We ought to have prevented the enemy from entering our borders. 20. There is no doubt that you might have done this.

CONNECTED PROSE.

These are especially to be feared who realize that I know what they are planning, and yet do not hesitate to attempt to destroy the commonwealth. That they (**quī ut**) might be hindered from attaining the end (**id**) which they wished, all ought to have striven with-might-and-main (**maximē**).

LESSON XIII

RELATIVE SENTENCES OF TENDENCY, CAUSE, AND CONCESSION.

Tendency (Characteristic): G. 631. 1, 2, Remark; A. 319. 2, Note, 320. a, b, f; B. 283. 1, 2, a, 4, 282. 3, 284. 2; H. 591. 1, 2, 4, 5, 7.

Cause: G. 633; A. 320. e, Note 1; B. 283. 3, a); H. 592.

Concession: G. 634; A. 320. e, Note 1; B. 283. 3, b); H. 593. 2.

HINTS.

Relative Sentences of Tendency. In deciding whether to use the indicative or subjunctive in a relative sentence, the first thing to consider is the ANTECEDENT. Subjoined is a list of the antecedents most commonly accompanied by a relative sentence with the verb in the subjunctive. Sometimes the indicative may be employed even here. It is safer, however, to use the subjunctive until a careful study of the grammar, combined with observant reading of Latin, has made clear the difference in meaning conveyed by the two moods in such instances. The general distinction will appear from the following: the sentence

Nōn is est quī cīvitāti *īnsidiātur*, *He is not the man who is plotting against the state,*

means merely that on this particular occasion this man is not a conspirator; but

Nōn is est quī cīvitāti *īnsidiētur*, *He is not the kind of man to (who would) plot against the state,*

means more—that not only is this man not at present a conspirator, but that he does not belong to the conspirator *class.*

TYPICAL SENTENCES OF TENDENCY.[1]

(a) *He is* { *suitable* / *worthy* / *unworthy* } *to receive honor* { 1. ***Idōneus*** / 2. ***Dignus*** / 3. ***Indignus*** } **est quī honōre adficiātur.**

2 and 3 may also be translated *worthy* (*unworthy*) *of receiving honor*. *This is worth hearing* would be **Hōc dignum est** ***quod audiātur.***

(b) ***There are*** { ***those*** / ***some*** } ***who say this is unjust,***
Sunt quī **dīcant hōc iniūstum esse.**

(c) { ***There is no one*** / ***There are none*** } ***who believe(s) (to believe) you,***
Nēmō **est** / ***Nūllī*** **sunt** } ***quī*** **tibi** { **crēdat,** / **crēdant.**

(d) *Those disagreements were such that they were settled by the massacre of citizens,* **Illae dissēnsiōnēs erant** ***ēius modī ut (quae)*** **interneciōne cīvium dīiūdicātae sint.**

(e) *He was the only one who could not be persuaded,*
1. ***Sōlus*** }
2. ***Ūnus*** } ***erat cuī*** **persuādērī nōn posset.**

(f) ***Who is there who*** *does not love his country?* ***Quis est quī*** **patriam nōn amet** ***(quīn*** **patriam amet)?**

Other forms will be recognized by their general similarity to the above types.

Cause and Concession. In the sentences

(a) *Cicero,* ***who had saved the state,*** *was called the father of his country,* and

(b) *Cicero,* ***who had saved the state,*** *perished by a shameful death,*

[1] It is thought worth while to insert this list, since the grammars are not all equally explicit.

it is natural to infer that in (a) the words *who had saved the state* name the *cause* of the honor which Cicero received, but that in (b) they state something *in spite of which* he suffered death. In proof of this we may substitute in (a) *because he had saved,* and in (b) *although he had saved,* without injuring the sense. This will make it clear how a subjunctive with **quī** may often serve to translate clauses introduced by *since* or *although.* Thus, the above sentences become

(a) **Cicerō, *quī* rem pūblicam *servāvisset,* pater patriae vocātus est,** and

(b) **Cicerō, *quī* rem pūblicam *servāvisset,* inhonestā morte necātus est.**

EXERCISE XIII.

1. There are those who say that Catiline will be driven into exile by the consul. 2. There was no one but hoped (who did not hope) he would attain this [end]. 3. For he was worthy to be praised by all. 4. The leaders (**prīnceps**) of the senate are not suitable [persons] to determine whether Catiline ought to be put to death or not. 5. He was the only one of (**ex**) the conspirators whom all the citizens did not hate and fear. 6. They are the only ones who fear me. 7. These crimes are such that he who committed them must be put to death by the severest [form of] punishment. 8. His reply (what he replied) was of such a character that there was no one who doubted that he must be put to death. 9. He said that this was the only case in which all held the same opinion (felt the same). 10. For who is there to whom liberty is not pleasant? 11. There were many who did not believe what the consul reported. 12. He is [a] suitable [person] to be elected consul. 13. There are those who hesitate to believe you. 14. I have nothing to say to them. 15. He was cruel because he did not punish the guilty [man]. 16. I am fortunate to have been praised by so many [of the] citizens. 17. Pompey

collected an army, though he was only a stripling. 18. He is highly (**māximē**) praised, although he is the basest of them all. 19. There are those who think Catiline ought to be punished, since he attempted to destroy the commonwealth. 20. I hope that the immortal gods will recompense me, inasmuch as I have worshipped them (pres.) conscientiously for so many years (**3**).

CONNECTED PROSE.

There were some who believed that the consul would drive Catiline into exile. But they were very much mistaken, since they did not know that Cicero was not one to do this without-the-command of the people. For he was worthy to be considered the shrewdest statesman of his time (of those who were then engaged in public business).

LESSON XIV

REVIEW.

Concerning Themistocles, a most distinguished (**summus**) man at Athens, it has been written that he persuaded the Athenians to fortify their city with very broad and lofty walls. Moreover, it happened at that time (pl.) that Xerxes, King of the Persians, made war by land and sea on the whole [of] Greece. It was not difficult for the Athenians to decide (was not a difficult deliberation for the Athenians) who they thought should be placed in charge (pass. periphrastic) of such-important matters and so great a war (**6. b, d**); for Themistocles seemed to every one to be the most worthy to be in charge of both army and fleet. Nevertheless, a certain Spartan was chosen commander-in-chief; for the Spartans used to take upon themselves (dat.) the

leadership in all wars (cf. footnote to IX, 2), although afterwards they were overcome by the Athenians. 7. At-this-time, however, Themistocles had such (**tantus**) prestige[1] that he forced all the Greeks to follow (use) his advice, whereby (by which) the fleet of the barbarians was defeated and many of their ships sunk. 8. Therefore there is no one but thinks Themistocles worthy to be considered the very (**vel**) first of generals of-the-olden-time.

[1] The possession of a quality or other abstraction is best indicated (a) by using the ablative of quality, or (b) by saying that the quality is *in* the person concerned.

Section IV. Conditional Sentences.

Lesson XV. The Indicative in Conditional Sentences.

Lesson XVI. The Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences. The Optative Subjunctive.

Lesson XVII. Conditional Sentences of Comparison.
Sentences of Proviso and Stipulation.

Lesson XVIII. Conditions in Indirect Discourse.

Lesson XIX. Review.

LESSON XV

THE INDICATIVE IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Protasis and Apodosis: G. 589–592, 496. 1, 2; A. 304. a, c, 315. a, c; B. 301, 306. 1–4; H. 572, 575. 1–6.

Logical Conditional Sentences: G. 595, 242. Remarks 1, 2; A. 306, 307. 1, a, Note, 278. b; B. 302. 1, 3, 261. 2; H. 573, 574. 1–4.

HINTS.

The terms used in the grammars to distinguish the different types of conditional sentences sometimes give the student an impression of difficulty which is not warranted by the facts. For proof of this statement, notice how closely the English and Latin correspond in the subjoined formulas.

English.		Latin.
	1. Simple Present.	
If a is b, c is d.		**Si a est b, c est d.**

2. Simple Past.

If a was, has been, etc. *b,*	**Sī a erat, fuit,** etc. **b,**
c was, has been, etc. *d.*	**c erat, fuit,** etc. **d.**

3. Future Vivid.

If a is b, c will be d.	**Sī a** { **erit** / **fuerit** } **b, c erit d.**

Only in the protasis of 3 is the Latin at variance with the English, and this becomes clear when we follow the rule, useful in many doubtful cases:

"In turning English into Latin, translate the TIME of the English verb rather than its tense."

Notice, finally, that to distinguish 1 from 3 in English (there is no ambiguity in the Latin) we must regard the apodosis.

EXERCISE XV.

1. If they think that I do not hear them, they are very much mistaken. 2. If they thought I would not pardon them, they were very much mistaken. 3. If the consul keeps a sharp lookout (looks out sharply) for the safety of the commonwealth, they will not be able to gain the honors which they so insanely (with the highest madness) desire. 4. But if they do not attain them, everyone will say that I have acted very wisely. 5. If they don't believe that there is great harmony in the Roman people, they deserve (are worthy) to be called stupid. 6. If you didn't see that this conspiracy was being formed, you deserved to be considered stupid. 7. Unless they hope to be consuls and kings, I don't know what good (**12**) they will gain by this madness. 8. If these get the upper hand (overcome), there will be nothing left (**12. a**) from this most lovely city save ashes and a memory.

9. If you do this, it will be well, but if that, there will be no one but will say it was done in utter (**summus**) madness. 10. If we pass-over these things, what will there be that you can look for (expect)? 11. Unless you expect aid from some province or foreign nation, how (by what means) will you be able to free the city?[1] 12. If by any means it can be done, not even one scoundrel shall pay the penalty of his crime within the city. 13. If I have done (**gerō**) anything unwisely (not wisely), yet I always have tried to serve the commonwealth. 14. He will not do this, unless you remind him that he must obey the laws. 15. If they betake themselves to that camp, then indeed (**vērō**) we shall be able to know who have been friends of the commonwealth. 16. If you come, we shall all be glad. 17. If he is making war on his own native land (dat.), he must be considered cruel. 18. If a stripling collected a great army, he was worthy to receive the greatest praise (be affected with, etc.). 19. Unless he conducts this war extremely-well (superlative), he will not be worthy to be made (**dēligō**) commander-in-chief. 20. Unless the senators are upright, they are unworthy to be at the head of the nation (be in charge of the commonwealth).

CONNECTED PROSE.

1. If he does not arrest this man, there will be danger that (**nē**) we shall all be butchered. 2. But if the consul can do what (**id quod**) he has said, there is no doubt that city, dwellings, [and] people (**hominēs**) will be safe.

[1] **Translate each member of this "mixed" condition according to the time indicated by its verb.**

LESSON XVI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Ideal Conditional Sentences: G. 596 and 1; A. 307. 2, b–d; B. 303; H. 576, 577.

Unreal Conditional Sentences: G. 597 and Remark 3; A. 308. c, Footnote; B. 304. 1, 3, a), b); H. 579, 582, 583.

Sequence of Tenses: G. 517; A. 287. g; B. 268. 5; H. 547.

The Optative Subjunctive: G. 260, 261; A. 267 and b; B. 279. 1, 2; H. 558. 1, 2.

HINTS.

Tense of the Subjunctive. As in logical conditions, so in ideal and unreal conditions, the TIME is the first thing to be determined; then the TENSE employed in Latin to designate that time.

In logical conditions the indicative is employed, the name of the tense indicating the time which the tense designates.

In ideal and unreal conditions the subjunctive is employed, but the name of the tense does NOT indicate the time designated. Thus,

TIME DENOTED BY THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Name of Tense.		Time Denoted.
(a) PRESENT (b) PERFECT	☞	FUTURE
IMPERFECT	☞	PRESENT
PLUPERFECT	☞	PAST

The English formulas and their Latin equivalents are subjoined. They should be carefully compared with the formulas given in the Hints to Lesson XV.

English.	Latin.
1. Ideal, or "Future Less Vivid."	
If a should be b, c would be d.	**Si a** { **sit** / **fuerit** } **b, c sit d.**
2. Present Unreal.	
If a were (now) *b, c would be d.*	**Si a esset b, c esset d.**
3. Past Unreal.	
If a had been b, c would have been d.	**Si a fuisset b, c fuisset d.**

Optative Subjunctive. This construction is introduced here, because the time indicated by the tenses is the same as in conditional sentences. It will be noticed that the perfect is not required for the optative subjunctive.

EXERCISE XVI.

1. If he should leave Rome to-morrow, we should be freed from danger. 2. O that he would leave Rome with all his comrades! 3. If we were free from danger, we should not fear this [man]. 4. Would that we were now free from the danger which is menacing everyone! 5. If he had not left his companions in crime (the companions of his crime) at Rome, we should not have left the city. 6. Would that he had not left his comrades in the city! 7. If he had taken away with him (17. b) the remainder of the band (remaining band) of conspirators, we should not have had to fear lest we should be slain in our own homes. 8. If we were living at Rome now, would it be necessary to fortify and secure our

homes? 9. Would that we had been at Rome at that time, so that we might have been able to hear those speeches which Cicero delivered against Catiline! 10. Were he now living (if he were, etc.), would he be able to persuade anyone to go into exile? 11. Would that we were not living among men of such a character that they are not afraid to disobey (not to obey, inf.) the laws! 12. O that there may not be more in this commonwealth who are unwilling to obey the laws than [those] who love (subj.) their native land! 13. If he should ever become worthy of being placed at the head of the state, we should all gladly obey him. 14. If he had not driven Catiline from the city, we should not now be safe.[1] 15. If he doesn't find-out what they are doing, how will he be able to save the country? 16. If you don't know what I am doing, why do you say that I am injuring the commonwealth? 17. If he did not fear the odium attaching-to (of) the word "drive out" (gerund), why did he talk so-much about avoiding odium? 18. Were he not afraid that he should incur unpopularity, he would arrest the conspirators at once. 19. If only they were not afraid of being arrested! 20. If no one doubted that they should be safe, why were they securing their houses with guards and patrols?

CONNECTED PROSE.

1. Had Cicero not dreaded the odium of the word "drive out," he would have at once forced Catiline to go into exile.
2. "Would that I were able," said he, "to prevent both Catiline and his associates from doing any harm (harming anything) to the country!"

[1] Translate each member of this "mixed" condition according to the time it seems to indicate.

LESSON XVII

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES OF COMPARISON. SENTENCES OF PROVISO AND STIPULATION.

Conditional Sentences of Comparison: G. 602; A. 312. Remark, Note; B. 307. 1, 2; H. 584. 1–4.

Sentences of Proviso with *Dum, Modo,* and *Dummodo:* G. 573; A. 314. a; B. 310. I, II; H. 587.

Sentences of Stipulation: G. 552. Remark 3; A. 319. 3, a, Note, b; B. (see Hints); H. 570. 3.

HINTS.

Conditional Sentences of Comparison. Particular attention should be given to the use of tenses. The English forms resemble unreal conditions, but the tense use in Latin is different.

Sentences of Stipulation.[1] Sentences introduced in English by the words *on the understanding that* (*that not*), *under the agreement that* (*that not*), etc., besides being translated with **dum**, etc., sometimes are introduced in Latin by the following particles:

Positive.	Negative.	
ut,	**nē,**	followed by
ita ut,	**ut nē,**	

the present or imperfect subjunctive. Thus,

(a) *A peace had been arranged, on the understanding that the river Albula should be the boundary,* **Pāx ita convēnerat ut fluvius Albula fīnis esset.**

(b) *Sulla directed that a reward should be given to the poet, but on these terms, that he should not write anything*

[1] See Professor Bennett's article in the "Transactions of the American Philological Association for 1900," pp. 223 ff.

thereafter, **Sulla poētae praemium tribuī iussit, sed eā condiciōne, nē quid posteā scrīberet.**

EXERCISE XVII.

1. He burst forth from the city as though he wished to destroy it. 2. He talks as though he feared the dislike of the people. 3. We must wage this war as if we hoped to conquer the world. 4. If only he does not ask us why we have come, we shall easily see what he is going to do. 5. Provided Jupiter helps us, we shall reach home within three days. 6. Didn't you notice the enthusiasm of the slaves, who shouted as if they were free? 7. So long as they saved their lives, there was nothing else which they were unwilling to lose. 8. So long as you don't do what you ought, it is of no consequence (**nihil rēfert**) that people praise you (inf. with subj. acc.). 9. The ambassadors will be allowed (it will be permitted to the ambassadors) to go away, on-the-understanding-that they do not tell anything that they have heard in the meeting. 10. I will report the matter to the senate on this condition, that you return home at once. 11. He was making-overtures-to the envoys as though he wished to stir up a rebellion. 12. As long as he does not stir up a rebellion in Gaul (a Gallic rebellion), he will not be arrested. 13. He gave them (**6. a**) letters, under the agreement that they should attach Volturcius to themselves (dat.) as a companion. 14. Provided that he is not attached to them as a companion, no one will hinder their going to Catiline. 15. O that he may never receive the messages which have been sent to him! 16. Provided he does not receive them, he won't know that they wish to attach him to themselves as a companion. 17. They are being sent to Gaul as though they wished to go. 18. Unless

they wished to go into Gaul, they would not be sent there (not **ibi**). 19. There is no one who does not know that overtures will be made to them for the purpose of stirring up war, just as if they were not friends of the Roman people. 20. Provided that he does not make war on his country as though he were the enemy of his fellow citizens, no one doubts that he will be unharmed.

CONNECTED PROSE.

If only the opportunity should present itself (be offered) to me, I would cause the whole truth (**rēs**) to be grasped by both senate and people. And so I have attached twenty comrades to my person (myself), as though I were not by-myself (**ipse**) able to learn [who they are] to whom Lentulus has made overtures.

LESSON XVIII

CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

The Apodosis: G. 656. 2, 657–659; A. 337. 2, a, 1–3, b, 2–4, Notes 1–3; B. 319. A, 320. A, 321. A; H. 646. 1, 2, 647. 1–3.

The Protasis: G. 595. Remark 1, 597. Remark 4, 656. 1, 3, 510; A. 337. 1, b, 1, 286, 287. f; B. 319. B, a, 320. B, 321. B, 267, 268. 4; H. 646, 647, 544, 545.

HINTS.

The Apodosis. This, being regularly a principal clause, and consequently in the infinitive, serves to mark the TIME of the condition, because the tense of the infinitive corresponds to the time, present, past, or future, of the verb of the original sentence.

The Protasis. The ordinary use of the subjunctive in protasis appears in the following table. It will be noticed that the tense frequently does not indicate the time when, but only

the completeness or incompleteness of the action. In particular, *tenses of the indicative formed from the* PERFECT *stem are always represented by subjunctive tenses formed from the same stem.* Thus, by the operation of the law of sequence, we find the pluperfect subjunctive standing for a future perfect indicative in the original sentence; the pluperfect being the *only tense* which can express completed action when the sequence is secondary.

TENSE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT PROTASIS.

Sequence.	Tense of Subjunctive.	Tenses which the Subjunctive may represent.
Primary.	Present.	1. Present Indicative. 2. Future Indicative. 3. Present Subjunctive.
	Perfect.	1. Imperfect Indicative. 2. **Perfect Indicative.** 3. **Future Perfect Indicative.** 4. **Perfect Subjunctive.**
Secondary.	Imperfect.	1. Present Indicative. 2. Future Indicative. 3. Present Subjunctive. 4. Imperfect Subjunctive
	Pluperfect.	1. Imperfect Indicative. 2. **Perfect Indicative.** 3. **Future Perfect Indicative.** 4. **Pluperfect Indicative.** 5. **Perfect Subjunctive.** 6. **Pluperfect Subjunctive.**

Tenses formed from the perfect stem are represented in heavy type.

EXERCISE XVIII.

1. If the city is safe, I am glad. 2. He says that if the city is safe, he is glad. 3. He said that if the city was safe, he was glad. 4. If Cicero handed the letters over to the praetor, he acted wisely. 5. I say that if Cicero handed the letters over to the praetor, he acted wisely. 6. Did you say that if Cicero handed the letters over to the praetor, he acted wisely? 7. If the letters are handed over (fut. perf.) to the praetor, that will be [the act] of a wise [man].[1] 8. We say that if the letters are handed over to the praetor, that will be the act of a wise man. 9. Did they not say that if the letters were handed over to the praetor, that would be the act of a wise man? 10. Unless swords were being drawn, we should not be leaving this place. 11. We say that unless swords were being drawn, we should not be leaving this place. 12. They said that unless swords were being drawn, they would not be leaving that place. 13. If you had not drawn your swords, we should not have gone away. 14. I believe that if you had not drawn your swords, we should not have gone away. 15. He thought that if you had not drawn your swords, we should not have gone away. 16. He said that he hoped we would come to see him, if we could.[2] 17. He would not be able to do this, if he were not consul. 18. You don't suppose, do you, that he would be able to do this if he were not consul? 19. Catiline would not have had to leave Rome, if he had not plotted against the state. 20. He said that Catiline would not have had to leave Rome, had he not plotted against the state.

[1] G. 366. Remark 2; A. 214. d, Remark; B. 198. 3; H. 439. 3.
[2] G. 518; A. 336. B; B. 318; H. 548.

CONNECTED PROSE.

Then he said that he would not hand the letters over to the praetors, unless the seals were intact. Afterwards, however, he promised to do what they asked, if they were willing that a great commotion should be raised in the state. They answered that they would not have asked this, had they known what the outcome would be.

LESSON XIX

REVIEW.

1. Caesar decided that for (dē) many reasons he must cross the Rhine, for he understood that if he should not venture to do this, the Germans would suppose that they could easily overcome the Romans. 2. On the appointed day, as though he were drawing up the line of battle, Caesar led his soldiers to the banks of the Rhine. 3. Across the river some Germans were standing, for they wondered what he was going to do. 4. This circumstance caused Caesar no concern (made to Caesar nothing of concern), so long as they did not attempt to prevent our men from crossing. 5. Then he began to make a bridge over (in) the Rhine, that the Germans might be the better able to understand that the power of the Roman people could not be kept back by a river. 6. But it did not seem [best] to him to use ships, and we for our part can easily believe that, if he had attempted to cross by their means (by them), the enemy would have been able to prevent him. 7. For the Romans were not well acquainted with the place where they would have had to land, and therefore (wherefore) they were afraid that if they unsuspectingly got into a dangerous position, they should be hemmed in by swarms of the

enemy and many be slain. 8. Furthermore, [Caesar] himself did not think it belonged[1] either to his own dignity or [that] of the Roman people, that he should cross (inf.) the river by this method. 9. Accordingly he had[2] this bridge made, as though by this very [act] he hoped to strike terror into the enemy (dat.).

[1] See footnote to XVIII, 7.

[2] See Lesson VIII (Accusative with Special Verbs).

Section V. Time. Cause. Concession.

Lesson XX. Constructions of *Cum*.
Lesson XXI. Temporal Conjunctions.
Lesson XXII. Causal Conjunctions.
Lesson XXIII. Concessive Conjunctions.
Lesson XXIV. Review.

LESSON XX

CONSTRUCTIONS OF "CUM."

***Cum* Temporal:** G. 579 complete, 580, 581, 584, 585, 588, 242 and Remarks; A. 323. 1, 2, 325. Note, a–c, 208. d; B. 288. 1–3, 289 and a, 290. 1, 2; H. 597, 600. I, 1, II, 1, 601. 1, 2, 4.

***Cum* Causal:** G. 586; A. 326 and b; B. 286. 2; H. 598.

***Cum* Concessive:** G. 587; A. 326; B. 309. 3; H. 598.

HINTS.

Note carefully the rules for the indicative with **cum** temporal. Then it is simply necessary to remember that, with the exceptions noted, **cum** in every sense is followed by the subjunctive. It should be noticed, however, that **cum** with the imperfect or pluperfect indicative is not a frequent construction, except after **tum cum**.

EXERCISE XX.

Starred sentences are to be written also with **qui**, as in Lesson XIII.

1. When Volturcius opened the letter, Lentulus was terribly wrought up. 2. When the letter had been opened,

Lentulus acknowledged both his hand and seal. 3. When the letters are opened, I fancy our-friend (**iste**) will be somewhat wrought up. 4. At-the-time when I was driving him from the city, I foresaw this. 5. Catiline is said by Sallust to have been not only a most energetic commander, but also [a man] of such courtesy that he seemed on-a-footing (equal) with the humblest (7). *6. He is a most energetic commander, though he seems to be on a footing with the humblest (dat.). *7. Though Gabinius (Gabinius, though he) had at-first begun to make impertinent answers (reply impudently), at the end he confessed everything. 8. Not only did the following seem evidences of [their] crime—the tablets, the seals, and the handwriting, but certain other things [seemed] much more certain. 9. When you know who I am, I hope you will think (**cōgitō**) how far you have gone (into what place you have advanced). 10. Though they are terribly wrought up, I am sure they will confess. 11. When letters are opened at a trial, the prisoners are apt (**sōleō**) to be wrought up. 12. At this trial, when the consul ordered letters to be opened, we could see the accused exchange glances. 13. When the judge asked them why they had exchanged glances, they hadn't a word (had nothing) to say. 14. The letter was being opened, when suddenly he confessed. 15. Although I do acknowledge my hand and seal, I say that there is no wrong (deny that there is anything of wrong) in the letter. 16. When they had become (were) terribly wrought up, the judge asked them what they had to do (what there was to them) with the Gauls. 17. I seem to be at Rome when I am reading your letters. 18. When you have read my letter, I hope you'll write a letter to me.[1] 19. Though your letters are well-worth (superlative) reading,

[1] Either **ad mē** or **mihi**, the former being more usual.

I haven't time to read (for reading) them. 20. Since you didn't have time to read the letter[1] I wrote you, I shall write you no more (**amplius**) letters.

CONNECTED PROSE.

When Volturcius said that a letter had been given him by Lentulus addressed-to (**ad**) Catiline, suddenly all were violently wrought up, especially since before that he had denied everything that the consul had asserted. Then, however, though he knew he must die, he confessed.

LESSON XXI

TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS.

Antecedent Action: G. 561–567; A. 324 and a; B. 287. 1–3; H. 602. 1, 2.

Contemporaneous Action: G. 568–572; A. 328. 1, 2, a; B. 293. I–III; H. 603, 604.

Subsequent Action: G. 574–577; A. 327. Note, a; B. 291, 292; H. 605. I, II, 1.

HINTS.

Antecedent Action. Notice how Latin uses the perfect indicative with many conjunctions, where English prefers the pluperfect. It should be remembered that although, as the grammars state, the imperfect and pluperfect are also found with **ubi**, **postquam**, etc., it will seldom be necessary to use these tenses.

Contemporaneous Action. To avoid confusion, observe the following sentences, in each of which **dum** may be used:

1. Present. { (a) *While* (as long as) *I am here, I am content.*
   { (b) *While I am reading, I hear a dog barking.*

[1] Latin does not omit the relative as the English does here.

2. Past.
   (a) *While* (as long as) *Rome lasted, there were senators.*
   (b) *While the prisoners were being bound, one escaped.*

3. Future.
   (a) *While* (as long as) *this lamp burns, I shall read.*
   (b) *While I am away, you will receive a letter.*

In each instance, both verbs of (a) denote action occurring *in* the same period, and *for the whole of* the period; but in (b), while the action of both verbs occurs *in* the same period, the action of the second verb does *not occupy the whole of* the period.

In sentences like (a), **dum**, whether rendered *as long as* or *while*, takes a present, past, or future tense, according to the time it really designates ("complete coextension").

In sentences like (b), **dum**, *while, during*, takes the present indicative, no matter what time it designates ("partial coextension").

Dum, *until*, should have its tense use carefully noted. The subjunctive will be found to be more common than the indicative with **dum** in this sense.

Subsequent Action. The statements of the grammars about **priusquam** and **antequam** may be practically interpreted as follows.

(a) The INDICATIVE with **priusquam** or **antequam** indicates that one event happens before another event, and assumes that this other event *really happens.*

(b) The SUBJUNCTIVE with **priusquam** or **antequam** indicates that the writer conceives of the event as an *imaginary* case, which may or may not occur. Thus, in the sentence

Antequam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dīcam, *Before I return to the motion, I will say a few words about myself,*

the speaker implies by the mood of **redeō** that he *is* coming back to the subject; but if we find

Priusquam id faciās, habeō quod tibi dicam, *Before you do that, I've something to say to you,*

it is clear that the speaker may believe that what he has to say may possibly prevent the other's doing the thing he mentions.

***Cum* Temporal.** The question may arise as to whether **cum** or **ubi** should be used in a given case. A safe rule is to use **cum** with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive if the "when" clause is naturally thought of as giving the *circumstances* under which the main action occurs; but if the *point of time* itself is important, to use the perfect indicative with **cum** or **ubi**. Thus, in the sentence

Once, when we were on a long march, we were unable to find water, **Ōlim, cum longum iter facerēmus, aquam invenīre nōn poterāmus,**

the "when" clause tells us the *circumstances* under which we were without water; but in the sentence

When Caesar reached Britain, the inhabitants tried to prevent his disembarking, **Cum** (or **ubi**) **Caesar ad Britanniam pervēnit, incolae eum ex nāvī ēgredī prohibēre cōnāti sunt,**

our attention is fixed on the *moment of his arrival,* and so we use the indicative.

EXERCISE XXI.

1. After the senators had expressed their opinions about Catiline, he rushed out of the senate-house. 2. As soon as he could, he collected a band for the purpose of destroying the city. 3. When the consul's advice was heard, each [man] told what seemed to him the best [thing] to do. 4. While this (pl.) was going-on, he set out for Marseilles. 5. Such being the case (since which [things] are so), why do we wait till he returns? 6. So long as he is in the city, we shall be in danger. 7. Before he returned, Cicero ar-

rested [some] other conspirators at the Mulvian bridge. 8. Before the envoys realized what they were doing, the praetors had arrested them on the bridge. 9. Before the battle is begun (**committō**), a signal is given on (by) the trumpet. 10. Before the beginning of the battle, we shall send horsemen to ascertain what the enemy's prowess amounts to (what the enemy are able (**valeō**) by courage). 11. Before beginning battle, they tried [to see] if they could escape.[1] 12. As soon as the praetors heard what I wished done, they left my house, in order to finish the matter as quickly as possible. 13. Then, by my advice, they hastened to the Mulvian bridge, in order to catch Lentulus and the rest before they should be able to cross the river. 14. After passing a vote of thanks to me, they voted the same thing in the case of (about) the others. 15. While the decree of the senate is being written out, I will set forth to you from (**ex**) memory what the senators voted. 16. When you compare this thanksgiving with the rest, you will be able to understand why it was so pleasing to me. 17. While Caesar was enrolling new legions in hither Gaul, war broke out in farther Gaul. 18. As soon, therefore, as he heard that this war had broken out, he hastened by forced marches into the enemy's country. 19. While the consul was explaining what the senate had decreed, the senate's decree was being written out. 20. He said that as long as he should be consul, he was willing to undergo all perils that he might be able the more easily to save the lives of the citizens.

CONNECTED PROSE.

As long as Catiline remained in the city, the consul was afraid that there would have to be a conflict (it would have

[1] G. 460. 1, (b); A. 331. e, 1, Note 1; B. 300. 3; H. 649. II, 3.

to be fought) with him. But after he (**is**) set out for Manlius' (**adj.**) camp, he realized that a great danger had been averted; for he hoped before Catiline (**ille**) returned to understand exactly how his attack must be withstood.

LESSON XXII

CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS.

***Quod, Quia,* and *Quoniam*:** G. 540–542; A. 321. 1, 2, Remark, a; B. 286. 1, b, c; H. 588. I, II, 2.

Substantive Clauses with *Quod*: G. 525. 1–3, 610. Remark 2; A. 333. a, b; B. 299 complete, 331. V, a; H. 588. II, 3, Note, 4.

HINTS.

Subjunctive with *Quod*. From the nature of the case, we cannot always tell whether to use the indicative or the subjunctive with **quod**. Thus,

They thanked the consul because he had saved the country

may mean either *because* (of the fact that), or *because* (of their belief that).

In the first case the sentence would read

Grātiās cōnsulī ēgērunt quod rem pūblicam *servāverat*;

in the second,

Grātiās cōnsulī ēgērunt quod rem pūblicam *servāvisset*.

***Cum* Causal.** In choosing between the conjunctions meaning *since*, it will be well to use **cum** when we can replace *since* by *when* without disturbing the sense. Thus,

Since the Aeduans could not defend themselves, they sent ambassadors to Caesar, **Aeduī cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt.**

Here the **cum** clause practically amounts to "*the circumstances being such* that the Aeduans," etc., making us feel

that it was under pressure of just those circumstances that they made up their minds to send envoys. But when *since* introduces a reason that is at the same time an admitted or undoubted fact, **cum** should not be used. Thus,

Since it is already night, depart to your homes, **Quoniam iam nox est, in vestra tecta discēdite.**

Here the clause with **quoniam** implies that the admitted fact of nightfall is a logical reason for departure. This is one of many cases in which the finer shades of distinction in words can only be hinted at. The Romans themselves often used **quod** where they might have used **cum** or **quia** or **quoniam**, the only reason for choice being the writer's or speaker's own view of the causal clause. He might, in short, look on it as a fact pure and simple (**quod** or **quia**), as a compelling circumstance (**cum**), or as a well-known reason, sure to appeal to the good sense of his reader or audience (**quoniam**). Careful study of a good grammar and of a dictionary with abundant examples, combined with observant reading, is the only way to acquire a correct feeling for the more delicate differences to be found in Latin.

EXERCISE XXII.

Starred sentences should also be written with **quī**, as in Lesson XIII.

1. Because Lentulus and the other foes within-the-gates (**domesticus**) intrusted such important matters to strangers, some thought that they had lost their wits (understanding had been taken away from them[1]). 2. As to the fact that he was rather emphatic in this case, he was not actuated by a cruel impulse (cruelty of mind). 3. Since there still remains one tribe which seems to be not unwilling to make war on the Roman people, I say that Gaul is imperfectly subdued. *4. I ought to be thanked, because I have freed the citizens from fear. *5. The senate will thank him "be-

[1] G. 345. Remark 1 ; A. 229 ; B. 188. 2, d ; H. 429. 2.

cause he has freed the commonwealth from danger, [and [1]] the citizens from death." 6. There was the additional circumstance that he had exposed himself to many dangers. 7. These are the favors which you have received from the senate, (that) you have been called king [and] (that) friend, [and] that your lands have again and again been protected from the enemy's raids by Roman armies. 8. He mourns because the city has been rescued. 9. Seeing that I have praised you most generously, why do you wish to hear [it] again? *10. Because you have defended me, I praise and thank you. 11. As to the fact that you call Catiline stupid, it should be understood (periphrastic) that there is no one either shrewder or more energetic. 12. Since I have spoken about giving thanks to the consul, I will now say a few [words] about the defence of the city (defending the city). 13. Since the citizens had been delivered from fear [and] their wives and children from death, they were now departing to their homes. *14. Because they have departed to their homes, they are greatly to be praised. 15. They lingered for a little while, not because they thought that Catiline was any longer to be feared, but that they might hear the consul's words. 16. I am sorry that I cannot escape. *17. Since you can't escape, you ought not to grieve. *18. Since I can't help his grieving (bring it to pass that he does not grieve), I must go away. 19. May I ask whether you thanked your friend because he had helped you [when] in the midst of perils? 20. Since you ask me, I will tell you.

CONNECTED PROSE.

I believe that their wits were taken from Lentulus and the others by the immortal gods, not because they conspired

[1] G. 481. 2, 3; A. 208; B. 341. 4; H. 657. 6.

against the state, [as they did,] but because they did not manage-to-have (**efficiō**) no one discover beforehand what they intended to do. Since the consul knew these (rel.) [facts], he was able to crush all their plans easily.

LESSON XXIII

CONCESSIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

Indicative Alone: G. 605; A. 313. e, f; B. 309. 2; H. 586. I.

Subjunctive Alone: G. 606–608; A. 313. a, b; B. 309. 1, 4; H. 586. II.

Indicative and Subjunctive: G. 604; A. 313. c; B. 309. 2[1]; H. 585.

HINTS.

Choice of a Conjunction. By substituting some other expression for the *although* of the English sentence, we can often determine which Latin conjunction best suits the context. Thus, in the sentence

Although this is so, I will do what I have said,

we may assume the following equivalents for the clause introduced by *although*:

(a) *This is indeed so, but . . .* (use **quamquam**).
(b) *Be this so to what extent you will* (use **quamvīs**).
(c) *Let this be so, yet . . .* (use **licet**).
(d) *Even if this is so, yet* (use **etsī, etiamsī,** or **tametsī**).

Do not use **quamquam** if the "although" clause states something merely assumed, as "Let justice be done, *though the heavens fall.*"

***Cum* Concessive.** As **cum** temporal, when followed by the subjunctive, gives the circumstances which incidentally

[1] This grammar would classify the subjunctive use as conditional.

mark the *time* of an action, and **cum** causal the circumstances which are the *cause* of an action, so **cum** concessive gives circumstances *in spite of which* the action occurs. The context alone determines which meaning **cum** shall receive. Similarly in English, the temporal conjunction *when* can take on both causal and concessive meanings. Thus,

(Temporal) *I could not refuse, when I was asked to come.*
(Causal) *I could not refuse, when they seemed so anxious that I should come.* (When = since.)
(Concessive) *I stayed at home, when I ought to have gone out.* (When = although.)

EXERCISE XXIII.

Starred sentences are also to be written with **qui**, as in Lesson XIII.

1. Although there are two views, it is not hard to decide which (**uter**) to follow. 2. Though you should follow Caesar's judgment, I will maintain that the other was the better. *3. Though Caesar rejects the death-penalty, he exhibits the utmost severity. *4. He doesn't wish them to be punished by death, though they have tried to deprive us all of life. 5. Granted that death was not established for the purpose of punishment, yet it is considered by many the best penalty for this crime. 6. I was almost murdered in my own house, although I had secured it with guards and patrols. *7. Without doubt they will adopt his view, though they believe the other to be much milder. 8. However many dangers may threaten me, I shall never cease to fight for my country. 9. Even though you adopt this view, you can't make me think that it is the better. *10. Though chains seem cruel to you, you must pass-this-vote (decree this). 11. Although they did not destroy the empire, yet they caused many to be in fear. *12. I believe that your view

should be adopted, although it is much more severe. 13. Though they may wish to blot-out the name of the Roman people, their plans will be crushed by the same Roman people. *14. Although he has blotted out the name of the Roman people, he used to be considered valiant by many men. 15. Even if he destroys Rome herself, he will never be able to annihilate Rome's glory. 16. Even though you hadn't witnessed (seen) the slaves' enthusiasm, nevertheless you must have (could not but have) observed the harmony of all the citizens. 17. Though [only] a few were left, the Spartans did not flee. 18. Granted that they did not flee, do you venture to say that no one wished to flee? 19. Though I do understand that it was about Roman citizens that this law was ordained, nevertheless I cannot feel satisfied (**satis crēdere**) that Catiline is not a citizen. *20. Though he be a citizen, he ought to be punished with death.

CONNECTED PROSE.

Though he who is an enemy to the commonwealth can in-no-wise be a citizen, nevertheless I will cause you to feel that my-client (**hīc**) is a citizen, although my-honorable-opponent (**iste**) says that he was an enemy. For, granting that he did bear arms against his country, who can deny that he acted-under-compulsion (was compelled), and (**nec nōn**) grieved because he had to commit so foul a deed?

LESSON XXIV

REVIEW.

EXERCISE XXIV.

When Caesar first came into Gaul, he waged war against (**cum**) the Helvetians. [Now] a certain chief of this tribe (**of whom a certain chief**), whose name was Orgetorix, had

persuaded Dumnorix, the Aeduan, to seize the throne in his own state and unite the Aeduans with the Helvetians. Afterwards, when Caesar began (express by impf.) to be in need of grain (**26**), the Aeduans, who had promised a supply of grain, kept putting him off from day to day (led day out of day). After he understood that there was some hidden reason for this (that the cause of this was hidden), he asked the Aeduans what it was; and though they were very much (greatly) afraid that something would get out (passive of **ēnūntiāre**), they said that Dumnorix was responsible (was doing these things). When Caesar heard this, he made up his mind that he must be punished by death, although he knew the good-will of his brother Diviciacus towards himself and the Roman people. The latter, however, with many tears, begged Caesar not to take any severe action (resolve upon anything too severe) against (in) his brother. Caesar, being (because he was) unwilling to hurt the feelings (offend the mind) of a man of such honor and justice, asked him to end his entreaties (make an end of entreating); and said that he would not put his brother to death, although he was afraid that he might be troublesome to him afterwards. Then he summoned Dumnorix, and before he let him go he warned him to shun all suspicions for the future; and he placed guards over him (dat.), since he wished to know what he did [and] with whom he talked.

Section VI. Participial Sentences.

Lesson XXV.	**Literal Meaning of the Participle. The Ablative Absolute.**
Lesson XXVI.	**Participles Equivalent to Clauses.**
Lesson XXVII.	**Review.**

LESSON XXV

LITERAL MEANING OF THE PARTICIPLE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

Tense of the Participle: G. 276, 282. Remark, 283; A. 113. a, b, 1, c, 1, 2, Note, 290 and b; B. 336. 1–5, 337. 4; H. 640 complete.

The Participle as Substantive and as Adjective: G. 437, 438; A. 113. e, f, 291; B. 236, 237,[1] 337. 1; H. 494, 495, 636.

Ablative Absolute: G. 409, 410. Remarks; A. 255 and a, 290. d, 1, 2; B. 227. 1, 4; H. 489. 1, 3, 5.

HINTS.

Tense of the Participle. In the English sentence

Laelius, returning to Rome, learned that his house had burned down,

the present participle *returning* may mean that the news came to him either WHILE returning or AFTER returning.

[1] Though not here expressly so stated, the same principle holds true of participles.

Latin is more precise. If we mean *while* returning, we must use the present participle. Thus,

Laelius, Rōmam *revertēns*, domum suam dēflagrāsse certior factus est.

If, however, we mean *after* returning, the perfect participle must be used. Thus,

Laelius, Rōmam *reversus*, etc.

The Ablative Absolute. The verb **revertor** being deponent,[1] the perfect participle **reversus** has an active meaning, *having returned*, and therefore naturally agrees with *Laelius*. Suppose, however, we had wished to turn into Latin the sentence

Caesar, having received the hostages, withdrew his troops.

Since Latin has no perfect *active* participle, except in the case of deponent verbs, we cannot translate *having received* literally. We must therefore change the participial clause to the passive. Thus,

*Caesar, **hostages having been received**, withdrew his troops.*

Translating the nominative absolute of the English by the Latin ablative absolute, we have,

Caesar *obsidibus acceptīs* cōpiās dēdūxit.

From this it appears that the ablative absolute construction is in part a makeshift, enabling one to employ a participle in the *tense* desired when it cannot agree with the subject or object of the main verb.

The converse is also true, that we must never use the ablative absolute when the participle can be made to agree with subject or object. Thus, if we have

Caesar, having withdrawn his troops, halted them on a hill,

[1] Active forms are also found. See Latin dictionary.

we must recast the sentence in the form

Caesar halted his withdrawn troops on a hill, **Caesar cōpiās dēductās in colle cōnstituit.**

Had we used the ablative absolute,

(Caesar cōpiīs dēductīs *eōs* in colle cōnstituit,)

it would have meant

Caesar, having withdrawn his troops, halted ***them*** (i.e. not the troops, but some *other* persons of whom mention had just been made) *on a hill.*

To summarize directions, in translating English participles into Latin, first be sure of the precise TIME indicated by the participle (either at the same time as the main verb or before it), then be sure that the Latin participle agrees with the proper word. A rigid, literal re-rendering of your Latin will be the surest test.

Present Passive Participle. Latin having no present passive participle, clauses with **cum** or **dum** may be substituted. Thus,

The letter was lost while ***being carried*** *to you,* **Epistula, *dum* ad tē *portātur,* āmissa est.**

The same construction may also be used in place of the present active participle.

EXERCISE XXV.

1. A certain Roman, believing that no one would discover what he was planning, formed a conspiracy against the state. 2. But the consul, learning of his intentions, took pains that he (**is**) should not be able to destroy the commonwealth. 3. Accordingly, summoning the senate to the temple of Jupiter Stator, he reproached Catiline bitterly because he had wished to perpetrate such a deed. 4. But he, fearing punishment [at the hands] of the state, left the city forth-

with, with three hundred companions in (of his) crime. 5. Then the consul, seeing the alarm of the people, called a meeting in (into) the Forum. 6. Having gathered a large number, he warned them not to do anything rashly. 7. These are the words which he said, all listening attentively. 8. Our foe has gone, no one interfering. 9. Many, having set out together with him, will go to the same place. 10. Fearing your wrath, they have fled from the sight of your eyes. 11. Soon, however, [after] collecting a great army, they will return to destroy (gerundive) the city. 12. Some of you will die, fighting valiantly for your native land. 13. No one may flee with honor [while] being hard-pressed by the enemy. 14. But remembering the brave deeds (**14**) of our ancestors, we shall drive back Catiline's mob of desperate [men]. 15. Then, after returning home, we shall be treated with respect by all. 16. The returning [heroes] will be presented with garlands and rewards. 17. The dead will be buried with honor, because [in] dying they honored their country. 18. Therefore, all believing that fortune aids the resolute, we shall set out for this war. 19. Forgetting our own safety (**14**), we shall take thought for our country, our wives, [and] our children. 20. But he (**iste**), after having led all his troops against his own city, shall see them perish miserably (by a dishonorable death).

CONNECTED PROSE.

Overhearing the words of those who seemed to fear that he would not have a sufficient force (gen.) to carry out his plans, the consul laughingly (laughing) asked his hearers (part.) whether they knew that all ranks were in harmony with regard to (**ad**) preserving the commonwealth. Then, convening the senate in the senate-house, he informed them of everything which he had done.

LESSON XXVI

PARTICIPLES EQUIVALENT TO CLAUSES.

Coördinate Clauses Represented by Participles: G. 664. Remark 1; A. 292 and Remark; B. 337. 5; H. 639.

Participle Equivalent to a Temporal Clause: G. 665; A. 292. Examples 1 and 2; B. 337. 2, a); H. 638. 1, Examples 1 and 2.

Participle Equivalent to a Causal Clause: G. 666; A. 292. Example 3; B. 337. 2, f); H. 638. 1, Example 3.

Participle Equivalent to a Conditional or Concessive Clause: G. 667; A. 292. Examples 5 and 6; B. 337. 2, b), e); H. 638. 2.

Participle Equivalent to an Abstract Noun: G. 664. Remark 2, 325. Remark 3; A. 292. a; B. 337. 6; H. 636. 4.

HINTS.

Tense of the Participle. In writing the following exercise, be careful to use the participle which is the exact time-equivalent of the subordinate clause. Thus,

Though he set out at dawn, he did not reach home before evening, **Prīmā lūce *profectus,* domum nōn ante vesperum pervēnit.**

Here the perfect participle indicates that the departure preceded the arrival. But in the sentence

Though our men struggled valiantly, the camp was taken by the enemy, **Fortiter nostrīs *resistentibus* castra ab hostibus capta sunt,**

the present participle indicates that the camp was taken while the fighting was still going on.

Coordinate Sentences. In apparently coördinate sentences, such as

He captured and put to death certain of Catiline's accomplices, **Quōsdam ex Catilīnae comitibus captōs interfēcit,**

the verb which denotes the prior action (in this case *captured*) should be put in the perfect participle.

Participle or Subordinate Clause? Latin being fond of compact constructions and neat effects, the participle is often employed when a subordinate clause is both grammatically and rhetorically possible. Sometimes two or more participles are used together; sometimes they are interspersed with subordinate clauses. Study the arrangement in the following sentence:

Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar, cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nerviōs Aduatucōs Menapiōs adiūnctīs Cisrhēnānīs omnibus Germānīs esse in armīs, mātūrius sibi dē bellō cōgitandum putāvit.—CAESAR, *B. G.* VI, 2.

EXERCISE XXVI.

The subordinate member of each sentence in this Exercise should be written both as a clause and with a participle.

1. He saved the city after it had been founded and extended. 2. They think that when the commonwealth is disturbed, they can obtain honors which they despair-of when it is at-peace. 3. I shall be unable to follow that man up, because I shall have been handicapped by unpopularity. 4. When liquidation was stopped, credit collapsed at Rome. 5. If Catiline is got out of the way, the danger will be averted (fut. perf.). 6. All who can be safe while the city is safe will be reckoned in the number of the enemy. 7. Though a praetor was looking-on, the city was ravaged by the pirates. 8. Although he was terribly wrought up, Lentulus nevertheless acknowledged both his seal and his handwriting. 9. When he has been thrust out, he will betake himself to exile. 10. This (**hōdiernus**) day and this case have recalled the knights from their dissension with (of) this order, and united them with you in love for (of) the state.

11. Those generals celebrated triumphs on-such-grounds (so) that the king, though he was defeated and overcome, continued-to-reign (impf.). 12. When the letters were read, he suddenly became silent. 13. Because he has been compassed about and enfeebled by my plans, [my] pains, [and my] perils, he will change his decision and desert his [friends]. 14. Though the man was present, Caesar said he ought to be deprived of his life. 15. The grandfather of this man armed himself (was armed) and pursued Gracchus.

CONNECTED PROSE.

When this deed was reported to the senators, silence fell upon all (cf. No. 12). For who could overlook the taking (part. of ēripiō) [of] a life? Never, since the founding of the city, had such a crime been heard [of]. Then the senators, though they were overwhelmed with fear, yet voted that he should be punished with death.

LESSON XXVII

REVIEW.

After four years, when Caesar was about to set out for Britain, Dumnorix came under suspicion (into suspicion for him) again, for he had learned from guest-friends that Dumnorix (is) had said that Caesar (reflex.) was going to transfer the kingdom to him (ipse). When Dumnorix got wind of (heard) this, he begged Caesar not to take him to Britain with him, saying that he was afraid of the sea, and was furthermore prevented by religious scruples from making this trip. Caesar, after urging him not to ask for anything more, at the end said that he would not do this thing, and sent Dumnorix away. He, though fearing Caesar's

power, began to make overtures to the chief men of Gaul; saying that Caesar, after taking all the chiefs across to Britain, would leave no one in Gaul who was able to resist him. On learning of this fact, Caesar took measures to restrain Dumnorix. Accordingly, tarrying for several days in the same place, after urging Dumnorix to be faithful to (remain in) his duty, he directed certain men to watch him without his perceiving it (not perceiving); and being favored with (finding) fair weather, [and] setting sail in the morning, in a short time he was carried to Britain. But before the soldiers embarked, Dumnorix, when the minds of all were occupied, left the camp without Caesar's knowledge (Caesar [being] ignorant). As soon as this fact was reported, Caesar sent cavalry to bring him back; but they surrounded and killed him as he was shouting that he was [a] free [man] and ought not to be restrained in this (such) manner.

Section VII. Miscellaneous Verb Constructions.

Lesson XXVIII. Exhortations. Commands. Prohibitions.

Lesson XXIX. Subjunctive in Direct Questions. Questions and Commands in Indirect Discourse.

Lesson XXX. Partial Obliquity. Attraction. Dependent Apodosis of Unreal Condition in Indirect Discourse.

Lesson XXXI. Review.

LESSON XXVIII

EXHORTATIONS. COMMANDS. PROHIBITIONS.

Exhortations: G. 263. 1, 3; A. 266. Note 1, Remark, a; B. 274, 275; H. 559. 1, 2.

Commands: G. 266-268; A. 269 and c; B. 281; H. 560. 2, 4.

Prohibitions: G. 263. 2, 271. 2, 275; A. 266. a, b, 269. a, 1–3, b, c, Note; B. 276 complete; H. 561. 1–4.

HINTS.

Exhortations. The sign of these in English is the auxiliary *let*. It must be distinguished from the *let* denoting permission, which is rendered by **licet, sinō**, etc. Thus,

	Let him tell us who he is	
is	***Dīcat*** **nōbis quis sit;**	(Command)
but	*I will not let you go*	
is	**Nōn *sinam* tē īre.**	(Permission)

The Future Imperative. Remember that while you will in general have little use for this form, it is commonly used in the case of **meminī**, *remember*, **sciō**, *know*, and **habeō** when it means *keep* or *consider*.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

In this exercise, both singular and plural imperative forms should be written wherever the sense permits.

1. Let all the best men[1] approach this place of influence (the influence of this place). 2. Tell us, Cicero, why you did not approach it (gender ?) before. 3. Do not approach that of which (**21**) you are not worthy. 4. Let all the best men understand that they are themselves quite worthy (sup.) of such an honor. 5. Do not hesitate, Quirites, to confer public-offices upon this most distinguished man. 6. If you trust me, bestow public-offices upon him. 7. Let me exercise my influence among those who have given it to me. 8. Use your influence among those who have conferred public offices upon you. 9. Let him exercise his influence in the Forum, the most important place for action (ger. of **agō**). 10. Know ye, Quirites, that this man is most worthy of honors at your hands (your honors). 11. Remember, my friend, that I have never failed a friend in an emergency (an emergency of a friend). 12. If you wish me to be faithful to you, be faithful to me likewise. 13. Let the man who wishes to be honored (**adficiō**) with office (pl.) not forget his friends [when] in danger. 14. If he hopes that I will let him go away, let him not plot against the state. 15. After this speech is made, let us depart from the Forum to our [several] homes. 16. If you wish to go away, do not plot against your native land. 17. Finally, if you wish to be safe,

[1] G. 318. 2; A. 93. c; B. 252. 5, c); H. 515. 2.

promise not to plot against me. 18. "Fear (**vereor**) God; honor the king." 19. Take thought with boldness (boldly) for your country's safety. 20. Come; don't come; let him come; let them come; let us come; let me not come; set out; don't set out; let us not set out; let them not set out.

CONNECTED PROSE.

"Romans, countrymen, [and] lovers! Hear me for my cause (**causae grātiā**), and be silent, that you may hear: believe me for mine honor, and have-respect-to mine honor that you may believe: censure [me] in (**prō**) your wisdom, and awake your senses (attend carefully) that you may the better judge."

LESSON XXIX

SUBJUNCTIVE IN DIRECT QUESTIONS. QUESTIONS AND COMMANDS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Subjunctive in Direct Questions: G. 259, 265, 558; A. 268 complete, 332. c; B. 277; H. 557, 559. 4, 5.

Questions in Indirect Discourse: G. 651 and Remarks; A. 338 complete; B. 315 complete; H. 642. 2, 3.

Commands in Indirect Discourse: G. 652; A. 339; B. 316; H. 642. 4, 5.

HINTS.

Questions in the Subjunctive. Notice that such questions are not mere inquiries about facts, answerable in the indicative. Their answer, if expressed, is naturally subjunctive or imperative. Thus,

Should I not admire this man? **Nōnne hunc *admīrer*?**

would require the answer,

"You *should* (or *should not*) admire him." (Subj.)[1]

[1] Or some other expression of potential or desirable action.

But

Do you not admire this man? **Nōnne hunc *admīrāris?***

expects the answer,

"I *do* (or *do not*) admire him." (Indic.)

Commands in Indirect Discourse. These become practically exhortations, follow the regular law of sequence, and have the same negative, **nē**. Thus,

Direct. *Don't do this,* **Nōlī hōc facere.**

Indirect. *They said that he should not do this,* **Dīxērunt nē hōc faceret.**

EXERCISE XXIX.

1. Why should not the sight of you in-crowds (adj.) be pleasant? 2. Why should not I be glad if the country is saved in my consulship? 3. Who would doubt that this place is most important for transacting-business (**agō**; cf. XXVIII, 9)? 4. You have reached this position of influence (cf. XXVIII, 1); why are you not glad? 5. They said that I had at length reached this position of influence, [and] why was I not glad? 6. They say that I shall soon reach that position of influence, [and] why am I not glad? 7. I am a Roman: do you think I am going to yield to a barbarian? 8. He said he was a Roman: did they think he would yield to a barbarian? 9. What shall I say? 10. He knew the consul was angry: what should he say? 11. Who is here so base that (he) would be a bondman (slave)? If any, let him speak, for him have I offended. 12. Who was there, he cried, so base that he would be a bondman? If any, [he continued] let him speak, for him had he offended. 13. Believe me; he does not intend to go. 14. He says, let them believe him; he (**is**) does not intend to go. 15. Go out from the city, conspirators; free the country from fear;

into exile, if that [is the] word you are waiting for, set out. 16. He said that they should go out from the city. 17. He says they should deliver the commonwealth from fear. 18. He said that they should go (set out) into exile, if that was the word they were waiting for. 19. I say that they are to go into exile, if that is the word they are waiting for. 20. What do I hear? I to go into exile? I to leave the city?

CONNECTED PROSE.

When the people had gathered in crowds in the Forum (acc.), Cicero made a notable speech about Pompey's commission. He asked why he should not be placed in command of so important a war. Was he not worthy to receive this honor? Or (an) were they unwilling to intrust this war also to the man (is) who had brought to a fortunate conclusion (ended fortunately) so many and so important wars already?

LESSON XXX

PARTIAL OBLIQUITY. ATTRACTION. DEPENDENT APODOSIS OF UNREAL CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Partial Obliquity: G. 508. 3, 541, 648. Remark 1; A. 340, 341 complete; B. 323; H. 649. I.

Subjunctive by Attraction: G. 508. 4, 629; A. 342; B. 324. 1, 2; H. 652.

Dependent Apodosis of Unreal Conditions in Indirect Discourse: G. 597. Remark 5; A. 308. d, Note; B. 322; H. 648 complete.

HINTS.

Attraction and Partial Obliquity. The principle of these constructions is the same. The indicative mood rep-

resents acts as *really* occurring. The subjunctive mood represents acts as *imagined*—they may occur, or they may not. For instance, a final sentence (purpose clause) states what some one had in *mind* as the end of a certain action. Whether he achieved the end or not is not told. The verb is accordingly in the subjunctive. Similarly, if the purpose clause itself contains a dependent clause, this may be part of what the purposer had in mind, and for the same reason be in the subjunctive. This is called "attraction" or "assimilation."

In like manner, we sometimes wish to indicate that some dependent clause in the course of our remarks is only given on hearsay evidence—some one else is responsible for the idea, and we are reproducing this *idea* of theirs without vouching for the *fact*. In English we sometimes use quotation marks. Thus,

Citizenship was given "if any one had had a residence at Rome."

The quotation marks show that, while we give the *language* of the law, we do not commit ourselves as to whether any one *really* had the benefit of it or not. In Latin this attitude of mind is indicated by the subjunctive. Thus,

Cīvitās data est sī quis Rōmae domicilium *habuisset*.

This is called "partial obliquity," "implied indirect discourse," or "informal indirect discourse."

EXERCISE XXX.

1. They celebrated a triumph under such circumstances (so) that the king whom they had defeated continued to reign (imperf.). 2. They celebrated a triumph under such circumstances that, while they were saying that they had conquered, the king was getting ready fresh [new] fleets. 3. Every one desired to be seen (**cōnspiciō**) while he was doing such a deed. 4. Indulgence must be granted to Sulla, because affairs of state recalled him to Italy. 5. He wished

indulgence to be granted him, "because affairs of state had recalled him from the war." 6. Do you know what he would have done if affairs of state had not recalled him? 7. Who doubted that, if he had been given opportunity, he would have collected a fresh army? 8. The king ordered those things to be made ready which, [as he said,] were necessary for the war. 9. It was the custom at Athens for those "who had been slain in battle (pl.)" to be eulogized in the assembly. 10. The orator will come into the assembly in order to eulogize those who have been slain in battle. 11. I do not know whether he would have praised them, or not, had he not been forced by the magistrates to make a speech. 12. Themistocles used to walk by night, because, [as he said,] he could not get to sleep. 13. Once some one asked him, if he couldn't sleep, why he didn't at least stay in bed. 14. Who doubts that, if he had been able to sleep, he would not have formed such (so) magnificent plans concerning the safety of Athens? 15. That he might perfect the plans which he was forming, he was accustomed to walk by night. 16. That the danger which threatens may be averted, it is necessary that Pompey be placed in command of this war. 17. I will so manage the affair that not even one of those who have formed a conspiracy against the state may die within the city. 18. Do you doubt how you should have felt about your position and renown, if you had lost them through my fault (**28**)? 19. Who doubts that you would have taken [it] to heart if your glory had been lost through (**per**) me? 20. I said these things that I might accomplish what (**id quod**) I most wished.

CONNECTED PROSE.

If Mithridates had not devoted all the remaining time to the preparation of a new war, I do not know but (**nesciō an**)

Cicero would not have made a speech about Pompey's commission. As it is (**nunc**), however, we are able to read a long speech, [telling us] why he should be chosen as general against Mithridates.

LESSON XXXI

REVIEW.

After Caesar had withdrawn from Britain, the winter-quarters among the Nervii, of which Quintus Cicero was in command, were besieged by the Eburones. The Romans kept themselves in camp (abl. of means), awaiting the arrival of Caesar, who had been sent to (to whom it had been sent) for aid (gen. with **causā**). In that legion which was in the camp were two centurions, most valiant men, whose names were (to whom the names were) Pullo and Vorenus, who were constantly engaged in a rivalry concerning [their reputation for] courage. Once, when the fight-had-raged (impers. pass. of **pūgnō**) long and fiercely near the fortifications, Vorenus said, "What are we to do? Why should not this day settle (judge concerning) our disputes? Now let us see which of-the-two is to be preferred to the other." Vorenus answered him as follows (to whom V. answered such things). "Do not," said he, "imagine that I shall refuse to go with you, for I have always been commended for having been (because I had been) courageous; nor do I doubt that, had the opportunity been offered me, I should have performed the most brilliant deeds within (after) the memory of man (pl.)." Thereupon Pullo first (adj.) went outside the fortifications, [and] Vorenus followed after him (rel.), that no one might think him less deserving of praise than the other. All the Romans were standing upon the wall, from which it was possible to see

the contestants (the contestants (pres. part. of **pūgnō**) could be seen), and were encouraging them with shouts and applause, [telling them] not to forget that they were Romans, and were beheld by the eyes of all. Who, [said they,] feared a death by which honor was gained for themselves, [and] safety for their friends ?

Section VIII. Idioms. Review of Case Constructions.

Lesson	XXXII.	Pronouns. Correlatives. Nominative and Vocative.
Lesson	XXXIII.	Military Expressions. Accusative.
Lesson	XXXIV.	Political Expressions. Dative.
Lesson	XXXV.	Legal Expressions. Genitive with Nouns.
Lesson	XXXVI.	Literary Expressions. Genitive with Adjectives and Verbs.
Lesson	XXXVII.	Expressions of Time. Ablative.
Lesson	XXXVIII.	Ethical and Religious Expressions. Ablative, Continued.
Lesson	XXXIX.	Business Expressions. Ablative, Concluded.
Lesson	XL.	Review.

LESSON XXXII

PRONOUNS. CORRELATIVES. NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE.

Pronouns[1]: G. 304–319; A. 194–203; B. 242–253; H. 500–516.

Correlatives[1]: G. 109, 110; A. 106, 107, 149. a; B. 140; H. 189.

[1] Read over attentively, note and review what seems unfamiliar, and use for reference while writing the Exercise.

Nominative: G. 203–206; A. 173. 1, 176. b, 185; B. 166–168, 169. 1–3, 170; H. 387, 393.

Vocative: G. 23. 5, 33. Remark 2; A. 33. a, 40. c, 241; B. 19. 1, 25. 1, 171; H. 75. 1, 83. 5, 402.

HINTS.

Pronouns. Especial care should be taken to gain exact knowledge regarding the use of words meaning *some* and *any* and their negatives; also **alius, alter, cēterus,** and **reliquus.** In this and subsequent lessons the Special Vocabularies at the end are particularly important.

Correlatives. Consult the Vocabulary for the various Latin words used to render *as.* When the word is capable of inflection, it has the case-construction of a relative. Thus,

This is not { *that* / *such a* } *book* { *which* / *as* } *I wished to read,*

Hīc nōn { **ille** / **tālis** } **est liber** { ***quem*** / ***quālem*** } **legere volēbam.**

EXERCISE XXXII.

1. Where are you, Julius? Where do you come from? Where are you going? 2. I have come, my friend, from the place (thence) whence those came who so often brought you (dat.) aid. 3. As often as he heard this, he refused (how often he heard this, so often he refused) to do what they wished. 4. Were the ships of the Veneti as large as [those] of the Romans? 5. Let us go to the same place as he has set out for. 6. One (a certain one) has said that there are as many opinions as there are men. 7. Don't imagine that your city is as beautiful as ours. 8. No one was so stupid as not to think that Catiline's deeds were infamous. 9. Some one will ask whether he has set out for the place to

which (whither) his accomplices intend going. 10. If any one had asked me how this could be done, do you know what answer I should have made (what I should have answered)? 11. Let us collect an army, that no one may dare to make war against the state. 12. He prepared for the war so quickly that no one knew what he intended to do. 13. The one desired war, the other, peace. 14. Some hastened to the place from which (whence) the messengers had come; others kept themselves in camp. 15. The rest, who did not yet realize that they were in danger, were departing, each one to his own house. 16. If any enemies are seen, let an attack be made on them at once. 17. "To every man his own," as the Germans say (āiō). 18. That view of yours, Galba, does not seem to me so good as [that] of our friend Hortensius. 19. The famous Scipio forced Hannibal to return to Africa, whence he had come to destroy Rome. 20. You and I[1] were so hardy that we did not fear the great Hannibal.

CONNECTED PROSE.

The (by which) more earnestly the envoys besought [him], the (by that) less did the consul wish to hear them; but at length, wearied by their constant entreaties, he said in reply to their petition (answered them asking) that they should return after ten days to the same place where they [then] were, and then they should learn whether they were to gain their request or not.

[1] Latin, I and you. G. 287 and Remarks; A. 205. a; B. 255. 1, 4; H. 392. 2.

LESSON XXXIII

MILITARY EXPRESSIONS. ACCUSATIVE.

(**Direct Object**[1]: G. 328; A. 237; B. 172, 173; H. 404.)

Inner Object (Cognate): G. 332, 333. 1, Remark 2, 2; A. 238 and b; B. 176. 2, a), b), 3, 4; H. 409 and 1.

(**Extent**: G. 335, 336; A. 256. 2, 257; B. 181. 1; H. 417.)

(**Limit of Motion**: G. 337 and Remarks 1, 2, 4, 416. 1, 418. 1, 2; A. 153 (**ad**; **in**; **sub**), 258 and 2, a; B. 182. 1, a), b), 2, a, 3; H. 418. 1, 2, 4, 419. 1.)

Double Accusative: G. 339. Remarks 1, 3, 4. 340. Remarks, 331. Remarks 1–3; A. 239. 1, a, Note 2, 2, b, Notes 1, 2, c, Notes 1, 2, Remark, d, Note; B; 177–179 complete; H. 410–413 complete.

Exclamatory Accusative: G. 343. 1; A. 240. d; B. 183; H. 421.

Miscellaneous Expressions: G. 334 and Remark 2, 335. Remark 5, 338. 2; A. 240. b; B. 185. 1, 2; H. 416. 2, 3.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. At that time many of the Gauls were committing themselves to Caesar's protection. 2. The general asked the lieutenant his opinion concerning the choice of (use ger.) a suitable place for pitching camp. 3. After he had taken them under his protection, he broke camp. 4. After coming off victorious in their battles, the cavalry returned to Bratuspantium, a town of the Eburones. 5. They refused to make a longer advance; in other respects they promised to be obedient to the commander. 6. New levies will have to be made if this legion withdraws from battle before the signal

[1] In this and subsequent lessons, constructions already treated in Book One are enclosed in parentheses.

is given. 7. He prepared for this war at the beginning of spring; in midsummer he finished it. 8. After this war had been carried on for three months, it was terminated-by-a-treaty by the commanders. 9. "Wretched man that I am (wretched me)!" said the soldier, "I've lost my pack." 10. We say that soldiers who are not carrying packs are in-light-marching-order; but when they have their packs, [we say that they are] in-heavy-marching-order. 11. The baggage was carried (pl.) partly in (by) carts, partly by the soldiers themselves. 12. After the javelins had been hurled, swords were drawn. 13. The legion which brought up the rear threw away their shields and took to their heels. 14. I remember your saying (present inf.)[1] that you would never retreat. 15. When this battle was fought, the enemy decided to lay down their arms. 16. To these (rel.) Caesar pledged the protection of the state. 17. Before engaging in battle, let us send scouts to see whether there is an ambuscade in those woods yonder. 18. After the army has been got together, he intends to wage war against a certain foreign nation. 19. He will hurry into Italy in order to enrol new legions. 20. When I gave him this advice (advised him this), he made the same answer (answered the same).

CONNECTED PROSE.

After Caesar had waged war against the Gauls for several years, nearly the whole [of] Gaul made submission [to him]. After his return home, the Senate voted him a triumph, because he had conquered in battle so many enemies of the Roman people.

[1] G. 281. 2, Remark; A. 336. A, Note 1; B. (no reference); H. 618. 2.

LESSON XXXIV

POLITICAL EXPRESSIONS. DATIVE.

(Indirect Object: G. 344, 345; A. 225 and a; B. 186, 187. I; H. 423, 424 and 2.)

(Dative with Intransitives: G. 346, A. 227 and f; B. 187. II, a; H. 426. 1, 2.)

(Impersonal Use of Passive: G. 208. 2, 217; A. 230; B. 187. II, b; H. 426. 3.)

Dative or Accusative: G. 346. Remark 2; A. 227. b; H. 426. 4, Note.

(Dative with Compounds: G. 347; A. 228. Note 1, c; B. 187. III, 1, 2; H. 429. 1–4.)

Dative or Ablative: G. 348; A. 225. d; B. 187. I, a; H. 426. 6.

(Dative of Possessor: G. 349; A. 231 and Remark; B. 190, 359. 1; H. 430.)

Dative of Reference: G. 350–352; A. 235. a, b, e, 236 and Remark; B. 188. 1, 2, a)–d); H. 425. 2, 4, Note, 432.

(Dative of the Agent: See BOOK TWO, Lesson IX.)

(Dative of the Object for Which (Purpose, Service): G. 356; A. 233. a; B. 191. 1, 2; H. 433. 1–3.)

(Dative with Adjectives: G. 359; A. 234. a; B. 192. 1, 2; H. 434. 1, 2.)

HINTS.

Dative of Reference. The dative in Latin has three principal uses:

(a) as the complement of a VERB, as

Hōc senātuī placēbat, *This pleased the senate;*

(b) as the complement of an ADJECTIVE, as

Proximī sunt Germānīs, *They are next to the Germans;*

(c) to denote INTEREST in verbs and expressions which do not require a complement, as

Rem pūblicam hodiernō diē vōbis cōnservātam vidētis, *This*

day you see the commonwealth preserved for you (or *saved to you*).

Notice that the omission of the datives in (a) and (b) would leave incomplete sentences, but that (c) would make perfect sense without **vōbis**. It is to the group of constructions included under (c) that the term "dative of reference" is here applied. One general direction may be noted here, regarding the translation of *for*. Thus, when we say

The sun shines for all,

our thought is rather of the common interest of mankind in the sunlight, than of the sun's responsibility for the benefit conferred. This *interest* is expressed by the dative. Thus,

Sōl *omnibus* lūcet.

When, however, we say

This hero died for his country,

we think of his death as *deliberately* suffered *in behalf of* his country. This idea (and likewise *in return for*) is expressed by **prō** with the ablative. Thus,

Hīc fortis vir *prō patriā* mortuus est.

The emphasis of the first sentence was on the PERSON AFFECTED, that of the second, on the BENEFACTOR. It is obvious that the same sentence might sometimes be rendered in either of these two ways, depending on the point of view of the speaker or writer.

Lastly, do not forget that *for* may also denote MOTION and TENDENCY (acc. with **in** or **ad**), and CAUSE (abl. of cause, acc. with **ob** or **propter**, gen. with **causā**, etc.).

EXERCISE XXXIV.

1. Let those who manage the affairs of state take thought for the safety of the people. 2. If you ask my advice, I advise you to present my-client (**hīc**) with citizenship. 3. [Was it] at a public meeting [that] Cicero asked the

Quirites whether they would give the citizenship to Archias? 4. When the elections were held, a man was elected consul who was thought by some to desire a revolution. 5. The consul elect thanked the people, because they had raised him to the highest power through all the stages of official advancement (offices). 6. At the last election, the man who once was strongest in political and personal influence found that he had become unpopular (had come into unpopularity). 7. There was no crime which was inconsistent with the plans of those who sided with Catiline. 8. There is no doubt that at that time this man behaved himself as a citizen. 9. The aristocratic party, and all who were truly patriotic, thought that he ought to be exiled by the senate. 10. When the state's highest welfare was at stake, a parvenu attained to the highest offices. 11. The senate decreed that those who were the first to try (who first [1] tried) to bribe the citizens should suffer the loss of civil rights for their rashness. 12. There are certain private citizens who wish to get control of the government for themselves. 13. When Lentulus heard that the senate was going to remove him from his office (dat.), he is said to have voluntarily (**ipse**) resigned the praetorship. 14. After he entered public life, he often used to address the people on-the-subject-of (**dē**) enrolling men in the state. 15. In a political question, all patriots do not always agree concerning the interests of the state. 16. Before you give your vote on this matter, I wish to ask your opinion about a certain other matter. 17. The people, to whom the defendant appealed, had already cast their votes. 18. Lucullus will be able to obtain citizenship from the Heracliots for my client. 19. Pompey had surrounded the rostra with troops (express in

[1] G. 325. Remark 7; A. 191; B. 241. 2; H. 497. 3.

two ways). 20. I have been engaged in politics ever since I was of age.

CONNECTED PROSE.

After the consul had entered upon his office, he asked the senators their opinion concerning the arrest (gerundive) of the conspirators. Then the senators (**illī**) whose sentiments about the state were all of the noblest (who felt all glorious (**praeclārus**) and great (**amplus**) [things] about the state), supported the proposal of Silanus, consul elect, who held that they ought to be punished with death.

LESSON XXXV

LEGAL EXPRESSIONS. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

(**Possessive Genitive**: G. 362, 366; A. 214. 1, a, 1, 2, c; B. 198; H. 439.)

Subjective and Objective Genitive: G. 363, 364; A. 213, 214, 217. a, c; B. 199, 200. 1–3; H. 440. 1, Notes 1, 2, 2, Notes 1, 2.

(**Genitive of Quality**: G. 365 and Remark; A. 215. Note, a, b; B. 203. 1, 2; H. 440. 3.)

Genitive as a Predicate: G. 366. Remarks; A. 214. c, d, 215 (see Examples); B. 198. 3; H. 439. 3–5, 447. 1, 448.

(**Partitive Genitive**: G. 367–371, 372. Remarks 1, 2, 6; A. 216. a, 1–4, c–e; B. 201 complete; H. 440. 5, 441, 442. 1–4, 443, 444. 1.)

HINTS.

Prepositional Phrases. The translation of the genitive with nouns offers little practical difficulty. It is, however, important to remember that prepositional phrases which modify nouns in English are, as a rule, rendered by the genitive case in Latin. A few exceptions will be found noted in the grammars. Typical instances of this rule are:

perīculum populī, *danger to the people;*
requiēs labōris, *rest from labor;*
reī pūblicae poena, *punishment inflicted by the state.*

EXERCISE XXXV.

1. The most ancient written laws of the Romans were [those] of the Twelve Tables. 2. Decrees of the senate were laws, unless they were vetoed by a magistrate. 3. Laws passed by the Comitia Tributa were called *plēbiscīta.* 4. Let permanent courts be established to-deal-with (concerning) extortion. 5. Caesar hurried into Hither Gaul to hold the assizes. 6. It was the praetor's [privilege] to grant a trial. 7. The praetor before whom the case of the poet Archias was tried was Quintus Cicero, brother of Marcus. 8. The jurors were chosen by lot. 9. Verres was summoned to court to plead his case concerning crimes committed when he was governor of Sicily. 10. The law concerning appeal (gen.) was passed by Sempronius Gracchus. 11. When a law had been proposed, it was [the duty] of the people to say whether it should be passed or not. 12. Do you know whether any laws were repealed by Sulla? 13. The person (is) who presided over a trial was one of the praetors. 14. Do not both you and I hold that one guilty of a capital offence should be cast into prison for life? 15. Miltiades was accused of treason. 16. Not being acquitted of this charge, he was sentenced to pay a fine (fined with money). 17. When Cicero undertook the case of Archias [as] his advocate, he adopted a style of speaking which was at variance with the custom of a court of law and a public trial. 18. They did not venture to propose a capital trial against the poet. 19. However, though his life was not at stake, he was afraid he might be sentenced to loss of civil rights. 20. Cicero said he had always undertaken the case of those who needed him.

CONNECTED PROSE.

If I show you the praetor's proclamation, do you think you can help coming (bring it to pass that you do not come) to trial? [And] when you have come there (whither), there will be no witness who will dare refuse to report all the infamous [crimes] which you have committed.

LESSON XXXVI

LITERARY EXPRESSIONS. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES AND VERBS.

(Genitive with Adjectives: G. 374; A. 218. a; B. 204; H. 450, 451. 1, 2.)

(Genitive with Verbs of Memory, of Emotion, and of Judicial Action: G. 376–378; A. 219 and b, 220, 221. a, b; B. 205, 206. 1, a, b, 2, a, 208. 1, 2, a, b, 209. 1, 2; H. 454. 1, 2, 455, 456, 457.)

Genitive with Verbs of Rating and Buying: G. 379, 380; A. 252. a, b, d; B. 203. 3, a, 4; H. 448. 1, 2, 4.

Genitive with *Interest* and *Rēfert*: G. 381. 1, 2, 382; A. 222. a, b; B. 210, 211 complete; H. 449 complete.

HINTS.

Notice particularly the rule for the rendering of personal pronouns with **interest** and **rēfert**.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

1. A little book of poems was dedicated by Catullus to Cornelius Nepos. 2. Archias is said to have treated of the war against-Mithridates (adj.) with the greatest (**summus**) skill. 3. It is greatly to your advantage to know the classic authors. 4. It is of great importance for youths to have the systematic training provided by a liberal education. 5. Is it worth your while to have written these verses, and

do you not repent of such rashness? 6. Those who bury themselves in their books are not always [persons] of the highest talent. 7. Happy [are they] who are prepared for the higher education in (by) the best branches by the most learned men! 8. Cicero rejoiced because he had received a liberal education. 9. From the study not only of the theory and practice of oratory (ger. of **dīcō**), but also of the art of poetry, came (**proficīscor**) that oratorical ability by which he was enabled (able) to give assistance to others (**cēterī**) and rescue some (**aliī**). 10. When we have finished (passed out of) the branches by which boys are (boyhood is) regularly (accustomed to be) prepared for higher education, let us devote ourselves to the study of literary composition (writing). 11. Greek systems of philosophy were much studied in Italy. 12. We cultivate our minds by studies which often we soon forget. 13. In the best course of study, the Greek and Roman authors must be read. 14. Who doubts that the study of literature ought to be considered most refining? 15. The orator said that he possessed[1] one type of mind, his friend another. 16. What branches do you believe belong to the higher education? 17. Both in talent and in oratorical experience (practice in speaking) this man surpassed every one else. 18. The course of my studies was arranged by one (**quīdam**) who was acquainted with all polite accomplishments. 19. Marius furnished Archias with the greatest subjects for composition. 20. [And] all these (rel.) were described by him with care and thoughtfulness.

CONNECTED PROSE.

It is worth my while to review these studies, provided I bring (**adferō**) from them something to (**ad**) your advantage; for in administering the state I always keep before my eyes

[1] See footnote, p. 42.

(put before myself) those exploits of great men which are recorded in (by) literature, and strive to remember all that they have said.

LESSON XXXVII

EXPRESSIONS OF TIME. ABLATIVE.

(**Ablative of Place Where. Locative** : G. 385, 386 and Remark 2, 388, 411 and Remark 1 ; A. 258. c, 1, 2, Note 1, d, f, 1, 2 ; B. 228. 1, a)–c), 232. 1, 2 ; H. 483, 484. 1, 2 ; 485. 2.)

(**Ablative of Place Whence and of Separation** : G. 390, 391 ; A. 243. a, b, d, 258. 1, 2, a, Note 1 ; B. 214, 229 ; H. 462–464. 1, 2, 465. 1.)

(**Ablative of Time** : G. 393 ; A. 256 ; B. 230, 231; H. 486, 487.)

(**Ablative of Comparison** : G. 296. Remarks 1, 2, 398 ; A. 247 and a ; B. 217. 1, 2 ; H. 471 and 1.)

***Plūs* and *Amplius*:** G. 296. Remark 4, A. 247. c ; B. 217. 3 ; H. 471. 4.

Disproportion : G. 298 ; A. 320. c ; B. 284. 4 ; H. 570. 1.

Comparative Sentences with *Atque* (*Ac*) : G. 643 ; A. 234. a, Note 2 ; B. 341. 1, c) ; H. 516. 3.

Ablative of Measure of Difference: G. 403 and Remark; A. 250, 259. d, 261. d, 1 ; B. 223, 357. 1 ; H. 479. 1–3, 488. 1, 2.

Dates : G. Appendix 1 ; A. 376 and Headnote ; B. 371, 372 ; H. 754–756.

HINTS.

Use of *Quam*.[1] In addition to the rules given in the grammars, the following points deserve notice :

(a) **Quam** is preferable to the ablative when **magis** is used to form the comparative, or when the comparative is an adverb (except **plūs, minus, amplius**, and the like).

[1] See Cornell Studies in Classical Philology, No. XV., by K. P. R. Neville.

(b) The ablative is regularly used (1) after universal negatives (**nihil, nēmō, nūllus, numquam,** etc.), and (2) in rhetorical questions. Thus,

(1) *No one is worse than Catiline,* **Nēmō pēior *Catilīnā* est.**

(2) *Who is milder than I?* **Quis est *mē* mītior?**

Disproportion. Sentences like

This seems too good to be true

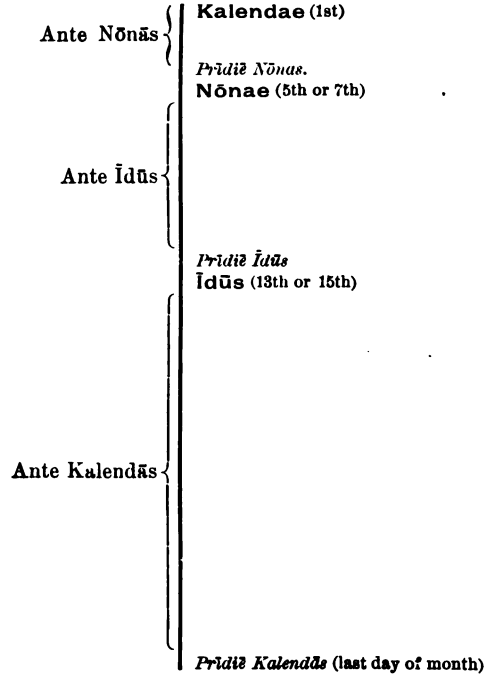
must be converted into the form

This seems better than that it should be true,

Hōc melius vidētur quam ut vērum sit; or with **possum,** to emphasize the possibility,

Hōc melius vidētur quam ut vērum esse possit.

Dates. The following diagram illustrates the divisions of the Roman month:



DAYS OF THE MONTH are expressed in three ways:

(1) If the date is *on* the Kalends, Nones, or Ides, it is put in the ablative of time. Thus,

on March first, **Kalendīs Martiīs**,
(literally, *on the Martian Kalends*).

(2) If the date is the *day before* the Kalends, Nones, or Ides, it is expressed by **prīdiē**, followed by the accusative. Thus,

on June fourth, **prīdiē Nōnās Iūniās**,
(literally, *on the day before the Junian Nones*).

(3) If the date is any other day than those just mentioned, it is expressed by **ante diem**, followed by an *ordinal* numeral, agreeing with **diem** and designating the number of days elapsing *before* the next Kalends, Nones, or Ides, followed in turn by the accusative. Thus,

on August sixteenth, **ante diem septimum decimum Kalendās Septembrīs**,

(literally, *before seventeenth-day-Septembrian-Kalends*).

For TRANSFORMING English into Roman dates, the following formulas will be found useful. Bear in mind that the Roman included both ends of a series in counting.

RULE I.—For Nones or Ides.

Let e = day of the month in English.
" d = day of the month on which the Nones or Ides fall.
" n = number of days before Kalends, Nones, or Ides.

Then,

$$n = d + 1 - e. \quad (1)$$

Thus, suppose we wish to express *May 3* in Latin.

Here

$$d = 7,$$
$$e = 3,$$

Substituting in (1),

$$n = 7 + 1 - 3 = 5.$$

The date is, therefore,

ante diem *quīntum* Nōnās Māiās.

RULE 2.—For Kalends.

Let m = number of days in the month in which the date falls. Then,

$$n = m + 2 - e. \quad (2)$$

Thus, suppose we had to express *April 28* in Latin.

Here

$$m = 30,$$
$$e = 28.$$

Substituting in (2),

$$n = 30 + 2 - 28 = 4.$$

The date is, therefore,

ante diem *quartum* Kalendās Māiās.

The YEAR may be expressed by giving, in ordinal numerals, the year since the Founding of the City (A.U.C. = **annō urbis conditae** or **ab urbe conditā**).

(1) For dates B.C., subtract the given date from 754. Thus,

$$44 \text{ B.C.} = 754 - 44 = 710 \text{ A.U.C.}$$

(2) For dates A.D., add the given date to 753. Thus,

$$1903 \text{ A.D.} = 753 + 1903 = 2656 \text{ A.U.C.}$$

According to the above rule, the sentence

America was discovered in 1492 A.D.

becomes

America inventa est annō urbis conditae bis mīllēsimō ducentēsimō quadrāgēsimō quīntō.

Before and After. The sentence

He returned four years { *after* (adv.) / *afterwards*

may be expressed as follows:

(a) **Quattuor post** ***annīs*** }
(b) **Quattuor** ***annīs*** **post** } **rediit.**
(c) **Post quattuor** ***annōs*** }

If the *after* be the conjunction, we may have the same, and two other forms in addition. Thus,

He returned four years after he had set out,

(a) **Quattuor post** ***annīs*** }
(b) **Quattuor** ***annīs*** **post** }
(c) **Post quattuor** ***annōs*** } **rediit quam profectus est.**
(d) **Post** ***quartum annum*** }
(e) ***Quartō annō*** **post** }

The use of the ordinal as in (d) and (e) is confined to sentences with **postquam** or **post ... quam.**

EXERCISE XXXVII.

* Starred sentences should be written in all possible ways.

*1. After ten days we shall break camp. *2. He broke camp ten days after pitching [it]. 3. Let us make an assault on the camp a little before day on the thirty-first of August. 4. They made an assault a little before the scouts returned. 5. Next year he was elected consul. 6. There is no one present but knows what you were doing last night, what the night before last. 7. Were you born on the first of April? 8. We shall be in the country from May first to July thirtieth. 9. He set out from Rome September fourteenth. 10. We have lived in Greece more than a year already. *11. Three days after, they marched more than thirty miles. 12. Day-before-yesterday I heard him say he was going to start from town within two days. *13. Three months before returning to Rome, he was presented with citizenship

by the Heracliots. 14. For two days the route lay (was) through a forest. 15. How many years was Caesar younger than Cicero? 16. The former was born 106 B.C., six years before the latter, who was said to have been born on July twelfth. 17. We sat up till midnight on the thirty-first of December. 18. The Saturnalia began to be celebrated on the seventeenth of December. 19. What is sweeter to men than life? 20. Catiline was too thorough to intrust to another than himself that which he could himself accomplish.

CONNECTED PROSE.

We hope to go to the country about July fourth, as it will be too hot then to stay in town. Please use my horses just as (not otherwise than) if I were there (**adsum**) myself. After a few days I'll write you a letter, so that you may know how we're getting on (what we are doing (**agō**).

LESSON XXXVIII

ETHICAL AND RELIGIOUS EXPRESSIONS. ABLATIVE, CONTINUED.

(**Ablative of Attendance**: G. 392 and Remark 1; A. 248. a, b, and Note; B. 222 and 1; H. 473. 1, 474. 2, Note 1.)

(**Ablative of Source and of Material**: G. 395, 396; A. 244. 1, 2, a, c, e; B. 215. 1, 218. 4; H. 467, 469. 1, 2, 470. 1.)

(**Ablative of Respect**: G. 397; A. 253; B. 226; H. 480. 2, 3.)

(**Ablative of Manner**: G. 399; A. 248; B. 220 and 1; H. 473. 3 and Note.)

(**Ablative of Quality**: G. 400 and Remark 1; A. 251 and a; B. 224. 1, 3; H. 473. 2 and Note 2.)

(**Ablative of Means**: G. 401 (first paragraph); A. 248. c; B. 218; H. 476.)

(**Ablative of Agent**: G. 401 (second paragraph); A. 246 and Remark; B. 216; H. 468.)

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Let nothing be omitted which tends to appease the gods. 2. In the temple of Jupiter Stator, let us with-due-ceremony worship him who preserved the city. 3. Among the Romans, it was a sin to transact business on inauspicious days. 4. No act of violence, no disgraceful-deed was too daring for Catiline to commit. 5. A thanksgiving to the immortal gods has been decreed by the senate, because a man of no integrity has been banished from the city. 6. If, as you say (**āiō**), you consider virtue the highest good, why are you trying to wrong me? 7. Because of a guilty conscience, a certain man built a temple of marble, to appease the gods, if in any way it could be done. 8. Is it right that this depraved being (**homō**) should live longer? 9. His character is such that he is always most agreeable to every one. 10. In the war which he waged [as] a youth, Pompey displayed (was of) the utmost seriousness. 11. The man who committed these disgraceful deeds sprung from a distinguished family. 12. Self-indulgent in many things, in this one particular (**rēs**) he was self-controlled and upright. 13. Wrongs are suffered by many with calmness, because they themselves have a good conscience. 14. The states which had done their duty were treated on a different basis from those which, from the inconsistency of their citizens, had neglected their duty. 15. Did it not happen miraculously that men from a state barely subdued should prefer your safety to their own gain? 16. There's no reason, is there, why, in a virtuous

life, [one's] thoughts and deeds should not be known (**pateō**)? 17. My principles of conduct, adopted in early manhood, prevent me from leading an immoral existence. 18. I haven't time to tell (gen. of ger.) you how many and how great are the excellent qualities of this man. 19. But they are as many and as great in him as (use correlatives to both antecedents) they were the opposite (were not) in all the commanders before [him]. 20. Let us put a man of this (such) self-control in charge of this (so) great war.

CONNECTED PROSE.

I counsel you to lead a virtuous life rather than an immoral [one], that you may the better understand that (in) virtue is the highest good. For though many sages have written about such an existence, without doubt those who speak from experience (having made trial) are heard most willingly.

LESSON XXXIX

BUSINESS EXPRESSIONS. ABLATIVE, CONCLUDED.

Ablative of Price: G. 404 and Remark; A. 252 complete; B. 225; H. 478 complete.

(**Ablative with *Opus* and *Ūsus***: G. 406; A. 243. e and Remark; B. 218. 2, a, b; H. 477. III, and Note.)

(**Ablative with Deponents**: G. 407; A. 249; B. 218. 1; H. 477. I.)

(**Ablative of Cause**: G. 408 and Remark 2; A. 245 and b; B. 219; H. 475.)

(**Ablative Absolute.** See BOOK TWO, Lesson XXV.)

EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. Render me an account of the money which you have had from me. 2. First, I bought a house for a small

[sum]. 3. How many thousand sesterces did you buy it for? It was sold to me for 10,000 sesterces. 4. Many of those who were with Catiline had fallen into debt. 5. He has spent so much money on his farm that he can never get out of debt. 6. The old man could not prevent his son from borrowing money. 7. For the youth was a gambler, on account of which fact he needed much (great) money. 8. Soon his credit began to go down. 9. Then, having lost all his patrimony, he tried to get gain by setting up a shop. 10. Many bought the things which he sold, because they wished him to be able to pay the money which he owed. 11. Don't exchange a good name for enjoyment. 12. How much (gen.) can I buy this for? 13. For as much as you are willing to pay. 14. But if I should wish to get it for nothing, what would you sell it for? 15. Surely you wouldn't wish to deprive me of that which I, who am a poor man, bought at a high (great) [price]! 16. Not at all, but tell me, please, really, if it can be bought for 5,000 sesterces. 17. Quite the contrary; on account of my poverty I can't sell it for less than 7,000 sesterces. 18. Whew! The price is too large for me to pay. Good bye. 19. Hullo there! Come back! You shall have it at your own price. 20. I'll take it (**accipiō**), and I think you will not suffer [any] loss.

CONNECTED PROSE.

On one side of the Forum were the shops. Here the shopkeepers used to sell everything that the Romans needed for daily use. Now-and-then they used to hear the speeches which were made to the people from the Rostra.

LESSON XL

REVIEW.[1]

Of all the generals who waged war against the Romans, no one surpassed Hannibal the Carthaginian. In the Second Punic War, gathering a great army, because [when] a boy he had sworn never to be on friendly terms (in friendship) with the Romans, through barbarous and hostile tribes who tried to resist him, as though nothing could stop him, he crossed the Alps, descended into Italy, and made war on the Roman people. Many Roman generals, after encountering him and suffering defeat, were either obliged to flee or lost their lives. No one could prevent him from crossing rivers, devastating fields, and striking terror into [the hearts of] the citizens. Before he departed from Italy, how many thousand men he put to death! At length he came before (**ad**) Capua; he sent envoys to say that he demanded surrender, [and] that unless they gave up (surrendered) themselves and all their [possessions] at once he would slay men, women, and children: wherefore let them not hesitate to do as (rel.) he demanded; for what hope or what safety could there be for the vanquished? Then Capua opened her gates; let in the barbarian; gave up her allegiance. On this account she was afterwards visited with the severest punishment. For who does not know how (**ut**) the Romans, in-their-wrath (angry) against the Capuans, took from them the rights (sing.) of a free-town, either punished their leaders with death or cast them into prison for life, [and] sold the citizens into slavery; so that at length from (**ex**) a fair city there was naught left (**12. a**) save the mere ground on which her walls had stood?

[1] This last Exercise is of a general character.

SUMMARY OF CASE-CONSTRUCTIONS EMPLOYED IN BOOK I.

1. Agreement of Nouns and Adjectives. (a) An adjective or a noun used in attributive or predicate agreement has the same CASE as the word (or words) which it describes.

(b) The GENDER and NUMBER of such adjectives or nouns are also the same as those of words which they describe, so far as circumstances will allow.

(c) A predicate adjective modifying two or more nouns of different genders is put in the masculine plural when the nouns refer to persons, and in the neuter plural when the nouns refer to things.

2. Syntax of the Relative. A relative pronoun is used to prevent the awkward repetition of some noun. This noun is called the antecedent. Thus, instead of saying

Librum vīdistī: liber est meus,
You saw a book: the book is mine,

it is more convenient to substitute a **quem** for the **librum**, and say

Liber *quem* vīdistī est meus,
*The book **which** you saw is mine.*

It will be noticed that the relative (**quem**) has the same CASE as the noun (**librum**) which it replaced, and that it agrees in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON (but not in case) with its antecedent (**liber**).

3. Accusative of Extent. Extent in both space and time is denoted by the accusative. Words found in this construction answer the questions *how far? how long?*

4. Accusative of the Direct Object. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative.

5. Accusative of the Local Object (Limit of Motion). The accusative (not the dative) is used to denote the limit or aim of motion.

(a) Except with names of towns and small islands, and the accusative of **domus**, *home*, and **rūs**, *country*, the preposition **ad**, *to, towards, for*, or **in**, *into, to, for*, must be used.

(b) Prepositions are not used with the words mentioned in (a) except **ad** in the sense *in the direction of, towards*, or *to the vicinity of*.

6. Dative with Verbs. (a) The indirect object of transitive verbs is put in the dative.

(b) Many verbs which in English are transitive are in Latin regarded as intransitive, and take a dative instead of an accusative. These are

1. Many verbs of *advantage* or *disadvantage, yielding* and *resisting, pleasure* and *displeasure, bidding* and *forbidding*.

2. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions

ad, ante, con, in, inter,
ob, (post), prae, sub, super.

(c) In the passive such verbs are used impersonally. Thus,

Nōbis placētur, *We are pleased* (literally, *It is pleasing to us*).

(d) Some of these verbs take an accusative also. Thus, .

Caesar Labiēnum decimae legiōnī praefēcit,

Caesar placed Labienus in command of the tenth legion.

7. Dative with Adjectives. Many adjectives take a dative to complete their meaning. Such are those signify-

ing *like, fit, friendly, near,* and the like, with their opposites. Thus,

Locus castrīs idōneus, *a spot suitable for a camp.*

(a) The genitive is preferred to the dative with **similis,** in the case of words denoting persons.

8. Dative of the Possessor. The dative is used with forms of **sum** to ASSERT possession. Thus,

Cicerōnī erat frāter, *Cicero had a brother* (literally, *a brother was to Cicero*).

9. Dative of the Object For Which. Certain verbs, especially **sum, veniō, mittō, relinquō,** and the like, take the dative singular of a limited number of abstract nouns, to indicate the object or end for which anything *exists, comes, is sent, is,* etc. This construction is frequently accompanied by a dative of the person or thing benefited, left, etc.

10. Genitive of the Possessor. The genitive is used to denote the possessor. It may be both attributive and predicate. Thus,

(Attributive) ***Hasta mīlitis* longa est,** *The **soldier's** spear is long.*

(Predicate) ***Hasta* longa *mīlitis* est,** *The long **spear is** the **soldier's.***

11. Genitive and Ablative of Quality. A noun and an adjective may be used either in the genitive or the ablative to express a quality. Thus,

Pompēius māgnae auctōritātis (or **māgnā auctōritāte**) **apud cīvitātēs erat,** *Pompey was a man of great influence among the city-states.*

This construction may be either attributive or predicate,

and is a common mode of denoting the *possession* of a quality. Thus, the above might be translated,

Pompey *possessed* great influence, etc.

12. Partitive Genitive. The genitive is used to denote a whole, of which the word which it limits designates a *part*. It is, accordingly, not used with **omnis, tōtus, tot**, etc.

It is especially common with the neuter singular of the following and kindred words (but only when they are in the nominative or accusative) :

tantum, *so much*, **quantum**, *as, how much*, **aliquantum**, *somewhat ;* **multum**, *much*, **plūs**, *more*, **plūrimum**, *most ;* **paulum** *little*, **parum**, *too little*, **minimum**, *least ;* **satis**, *enough ;* **id, illud, istud**, *that ;* **nihil**, *nothing ;* **quod** and **quid**, *which* and *what ?* **idem**, *the same.*

(a) Neuter adjectives of the second declension can be treated as substantives in the genitive. Thus,

nihil reliquī, *nothing left.*

(b) Neuter adjectives of the third declension can be treated as substantives only when in combination with adjectives of the second.

13. Genitive with Adjectives. Adjectives of fulness and want, of participation, of power, of knowledge and ignorance, of desire and disgust, take the genitive. Thus,

perītus bellī, *skilled in war.*

14. Genitive with Verbs.[1] (a) Verbs of reminding, remembering, and forgetting, take the genitive.

(1) Verbs of reminding more often take **dē** with the ablative.

(2) **Recordor** is always followed by the accusative.

[1] See Cornell Studies in Classical Philology, No. XIV, by Clinton L. Babcock.

(3) Neuter pronouns and neuter adjectives used substantively regularly stand in the accusative.

(b) **Misereor, miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet,** and **taedet** take the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing. Thus,

Mē stultitiae meae piget, *I am disgusted with my own folly.*

15. Ablative of Place. Locative. (a) Place where is denoted by the ablative with the preposition **in.**

(b) Names of towns and small islands, and the words **domus** and **rūs** are put in the locative to denote the place where.

16. Ablative of the Place Whence. Ablative of Separation. The ablative answers the question "whence?" and takes as a rule the prepositions **ex,** *out of,* **dē,** *from,* **ab,** *off.*

(a) Prepositions are omitted with names of towns, **domus,** and **rūs.**

(b) The ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to express separation, privation, and want. Thus,

Metū nōs līberābis, *You will free us from fear.*

17. Ablative of Attendance. The ablative following the preposition **cum** is used to denote accompaniment.

(a) In military phrases, the troops with which a march is made are put in the ablative, with or without **cum.** Thus,

Caesar (cum) omnibus cōpiīs castrīs ēgressus est,
Caesar with all his forces went out of the camp.

(b) With personal and reflexive pronouns, and usually with relatives, **cum** is enclitic. Thus,

Quibuscum advēnistī? *With whom did you come here?*

18. Ablative of Time. Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

19. Ablative of Origin. (a) Participles which signify birth take the ablative of origin, sometimes with the prepositions **ex** and **dē**. Thus,

Eum rogāmus quō genere nātus sit, *We ask him what family he belongs to* (literally, *from what . . . born*).

(b) The ablative, generally with **ex**, is used to denote the material. Thus,

Gladius ex ferrō factus est, *The sword was made of iron.*

20. Ablative of Respect. The ablative is used to denote that in respect to which any statement is regarded as true. Thus,

Illī montēs altitūdine parēs sunt, *Those mountains are equal in height.*

21. Ablative with *Dīgnus* and *Indīgnus*. With **dignus** and **indignus**, the ablative is used to denote that of which one is worthy or unworthy. Thus,

laude dignus, *worthy of praise.*

22. Ablative of Manner. The ablative with the preposition **cum** is used to express manner.

(a) **Cum** may be omitted when there is an adjective agreeing with the ablative. Thus,

Māgnō (cum) gaudiō urbem condidērunt, *With great rejoicing they founded a city.*

23. Ablative of Means. The ablative without a preposition is used to denote the means or instrument.

24. Ablative of Agent. The ablative with **ā** or **ab** is used, with passive verbs, to denote the one with whom the act originates.

(a) When a person is regarded as the *instrument* of another, **per** with the accusative is used. Thus,

Caesar ā rēge per lēgātōs ad conloquium vocātus est, *Caesar was invited by the king, through his ambassadors, to a conference.*

25. **Ablative of Measure of Difference.** The ablative is used with comparatives to denote the degree of difference. Thus,

Balbus capite altior est quam Gāius, *Balbus is a head taller than Caius.*

26. **Ablative with *Opus* and *Ūsus*.** With **opus** or **ūsus,** *need,* the thing needed is put in the ablative, the person needing in the dative of possessor. Thus,

Mihi auxilio tuō opus est, *I need your aid* (literally, *need is to me,* etc.).

27. **Ablative with Certain Deponents.** With **ūtor** and **abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vēscor** the ablative is used instead of an accusative of the direct object.

28. **Ablative of Cause.** The ablative, either without a preposition, or accompanied by **ex** or **dē,** is used to express cause, chiefly with verbs of emotion. Thus,

Īrā pallidus est, *He is white with rage.*

(a) Cause may also be expressed by **ob** or **propter** with the accusative.

29. **Ablative of Comparison.** The ablative may be used instead of **quam** to express a comparison, when the first of the two things compared is either in the nominative or the accusative case. So especially after negatives and in rhetorical questions. Thus,

Quis mītior est mē? *Who is milder than I?*

VOCABULARY

TO BOOKS ONE AND TWO

A

able, be, possum, posse, potuī; valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (*not with inf.*).

about, dē, *with abl.*; (*with numerals*) circiter.

above, suprā.

absolute, perpetuus, -a, -um.

accept, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

accomplice, comes, -itis, *m.*, socius, -ī, *m.*

accomplish, adsequor, -ī, -cūtus sum; cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

accordingly, itaque.

account, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*; **on account of,** ob *or* propter, *w. acc.*

accuse, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

accustomed, be, soleō, -ēre, -itus sum.

acknowledge, (*confess*) fateor, -ērī, fassus sum; cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum; (*recognize*) cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.

acquainted with, be, *perf. of* nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum; sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

across, trāns, *w acc.*

act (*verb*), faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.

act (*noun*), factum, -ī, *n.*

act of violence, facinus, -oris, *n.*

actuate, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.

address, agō, -ere, ēgī, actum, *w.* cum *and abl.*

administer, administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

admire, admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum.

adopt, sequor, -ī, -cūtus sum; ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*; (*a principle*) suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

advance (*verb*), prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum; (*to an attack*) sīgna īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.

advance (*noun*), prōcessiō, -ōnis, *f.*

advantage, frūctus, -ūs, *m.*; **be to one's advantage,** interest *or* rēfert *w. gen. of the person.*

advice, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*; **ask advice of,** cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -sultum, *w. acc.*

advise, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

advocate, advocātus, -ī, *m.*

Aeduuan, Haeduus, -a, -um.

affair, rēs, reī, *f.*; **affairs of state,** rēs publica, reī pūblicae, *f.*

affect, adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
afraid (of), be, timeō, -ēre, -uī; (*of prudent fear*) metuō, -ere, -uī; (*of reverent fear*) vereor, -ērī, -itus sum.
after (*prep.*), post, *w. acc.*
after (*conj.*), postquam, post . . . quam, *or* posteāquam.
afterwards, posteā; post.
again, iterum; rursus; **again and again,** iterum atque iterum.
against, contrā, *w. acc.*; in, *w. acc.*; *after* bellum gerere, cum, *w. abl.*
agreeable, iūcundus, -a, -um.
aid, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
alarm (*verb*), terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
alarm (*noun*), timor, -ōris, *m.*; (*of reasonable fear*) metus, -ūs, *m.*
Alesia, Alesia, -ae, *f.*
Alexander, Alexander, -drī, *m.*
alike, similis, -e.
all, omnis, -e; (*when equivalent to* **the whole**) tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.* tōtīus.
ally, socius, -ī, *m.*
alone, sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* sōlīus.
Alps, Alpēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
already, iam.
also, etiam; quoque (*post positive*).
although, cum; licet; quamquam; quamvīs; ut, nē.
always, semper.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
ambuscade, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
among, in, *w. abl.*; inter, *w. acc.*; apud, *w. acc.* (*especially of persons*).
ancestors, māiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*
ancient, antīquus, -a, -um.
and, (*simple connective*) et; (*emphasizes following idea*) atque, ac (*the latter only before a consonant*); (*enclitic, joining things conceived as closely related*) -que; **and not,** neque, nec (*the latter only before a consonant*); (*with subj. in final sentences, etc.*) nēve, neu; **both . . . and,** et . . . et; **and so,** itaque.
anger, īra, -ae, *f.*
angry, īrātus, -a, -um.
annihilate, exstinguō, -ere, -stinxī, -stinctum.
another, alius, -a, -ud, *gen.* alīus.
announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
answer, respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsum.
anxious, sollicitus, -a, -um; **anxious for,** cupidus, -a, -um, *w. gen.*
any, any one, anything, (*adj.*) aliquī -qua, -quod, *gen.* alicūius; (*pron.*) aliquis, -qua, -quid; (*after* sī, nisi, nē, num) quis, qua, quid, *gen.* cūius; (*adj. w. neg.*) ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* ūllīus; (*pron. w. neg.*) quisquam, quicquam *or* quīdquam, gen. cūiusquam.
any longer, diūtius; (*w. neg.*) iam.

Apennines, Apennīnus, -ī, *m.*
appeal to, prōvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w.* ad *and acc.*
appeal, prōvocātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
appear, videor, -ērī, vīsus sum.
appease, plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
applause, plausus, -ūs, *m.*
appoint, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum; (*to an office*) creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
approach, appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w. dat.*; (*figuratively*) attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum.
approve, probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
April, Aprīlis, -is, *adj.*
arbitrator, arbiter, -trī, *m.*
Archias, Archiās, -ae, *m.*
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*
Aristides, Aristīdēs, -is, *m.*
aristocratic party, optimātēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
arm, armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūm.
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
arrest, comprehendō, -ere, -dī, -prehēnsum.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive, adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
arrogance, superbia, -ae, *f.*
arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f.*
as, (of time) cum, ut; **as . . . as, so . . . as,** tam . . . quam; **as great as, as large as,** tantus . . . quantus; **as long as,** quam diū; **as many as,** tot . . . quot; **as often as,** totiēns . . quotiēns; **as soon as,** cum prīmum, ut prīmum; **as if, as though, just as if,** ut sī, ac sī, quasi, tamquam sī, velut, velut sī; **as . . . as possible,** quam, *w. superlative.*
as to the fact that, quod.
ascertain, cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.
ashamed, be, pudet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., w. acc. of person and gen. of thing.*
ash, ashes, cinis, -eris, *m.*
Asia, Asia, -ae, *f.*
ask, ask for, (*w. two accusatives, or acc. of thing and* ab *with abl. of person*) pōscō, -ere, popōscī; postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*w. acc. of thing and* ab *w. abl. of person*) petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; postulō, -āre, -āvī, -atum; (*w. acc. of thing and* ab, ex, *or* dē *w. abl. of person*) quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum. (*For* **ask** *in the sense* **inquire** *use* rogō *or* quaerō).
assail, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
assassin, sīcārius, -ī, *m.*
assassinate, see **kill.**
assault, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
assemble, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
assembly, cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.*
assert, praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
assess, aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
assign, attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
assist, adiuvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
assistance, give, opitulor, -ārī, -ātus sum.

assizes, hold, conventūs agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
at, *loc., or* in, *w. abl.*
at all, omnīnō.
at first, prīmō.
at hand, be, adsum, -esse, -fuī, futūrus.
at least, saltem.
at length, tandem.
at once, statim.
at peace, quiētus, -a, -um.
at some time, aliquandō.
at stake, be, 3*d pers. pass. of* agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
at the end, ad extrēmum; ad fīnem.
at the foot of, sub, *w. abl.*
at the house of, ad *or* apud, *w. acc.*
at the time when, tum cum.
at variance with, be, abhorreō, -ēre, -uī, *w.* ab *and abl.* [*and f.*
Athenian, Athēniēnsis, -is, *m.*
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
attach, coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum.
attack (*a town*), oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **make an attack on,** impetum facere in, *w. acc.*
attain, adsequor, -ī, -cūtus sum; **attain to highest offices,** ad summōs honōrēs pervenīre.
attempt (*verb*), cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; tentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
attempt (*noun*), cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*
attend, attendō, -ere, -ī, -tum.
attentively, dīligenter.
Atticus, Atticus, -ī, *m.*
atone for, satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *w.* dē *and abl.*
author, scrīptor, -ōris, *m.*; **classic authors, the,** veterēs scrīptōrēs.
avert, dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
avoid, vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; effugiō, -ere, -fūgī.
await, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

B

baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*; **without baggage,** expedītus, -a, -um.
Balbus, Balbus, -ī, *m.*
band, manus, -ūs, *f.*
banish, dēpellō *or* expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
bank, rīpa, -ae, *f.*
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*
barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um.
barely, male; vix.
base, turpis, -e.
basis, ratiō, -onis, *f.*
battle, proelium, -ī, *n.*; pūgna, -ae, *f.*; **fight a battle,** proelium facere; **withdraw from battle,** proeliō excēdere.
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
be acquainted with, *perf. of* nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum; sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
be afraid of, timeō, -ēre, -uī; (*of prudent fear*) metuō, -ere, -uī; (*of reverent fear*) vereor, -ērī, -itus sum.
be at hand, adsum, -esse, -fuī, [-futūrus.
be at variance with, abhorreō, -ēre, -uī, *w.* ab *and abl.* [sum.
be descended, orior, -īrī, ortus

be engaged in, versor, -ārī, -ātus sum. [-ēre, ursī.
be hard pressed, *pass. of* urgeō,
be hidden, lateō, -ēre, -uī.
be important, interest *or* rēfert, *w. gen. and inf.*
be in charge *or* **command of,** praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *w. dat.*
be of consequence, interest *or* rēfert, *w. gen. of person.*
be present, adsum *or* praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
be silent, taceō, -ēre, -uī -itum.
be sure, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
be to one's advantage, interest *or* rēfert, *w. gen. of the person.*
be unacquainted with, nesciō, -īre, -īvī.
be without, careō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *w. abl.*
bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
beat, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
because, quod; quia.
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
become master of, potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *w. abl.* [-ticuī.
become silent, conticēscō, -ere,
bed, lectus, -ī, *m.*
before (*adv.*), anteā.
before (*prep.*), ante, *w. acc.*; apud, *w. acc.*
before (*conj.*), antequam *and* ante . . . quam; priusquam *and* prius . . . quam.
before last, superior, -ōris.
before that, anteā.
beforehand, ante.
beg (for), petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
began, coepī, coepisse, coeptus sum (*the last form used with inf. pass.*).
begin, incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; initium facere *w. gen.*
behave oneself as, sē gerere prō, *w. abl.*
behold, cōnspiciō, -ere; -spēxī, -spectum; videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.
Belgian, Belga, -ae, *m.*
believe, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *w. dat.* [ad *and acc.*
belong to, pertineō, -ēre, -uī, *w.*
beseech, ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
besiege, oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī,
bestow, *see* **confer.** [-ātum.
betake oneself, sē cōnferre.
better (*adj.*), melior, -ius; (*adv.*) melius.
between, inter, *w. acc.*
blot out, exstinguō, -ere, -nxī, -nctum.
bid, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iūssum.
bitterly, graviter.
boat, linter, -tris, *f.*
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
bold, audāx, -ācis.
boldly, audacter; fortiter.
boldness, audācia, -ae, *f.*
book, liber, -bri, *m.*; **little book,** libellus, -ī, *m.* [*w. dat.*
bordering on, fīnitimus, -a, -um,
borders, fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
born, be, nāscor, -ī, nātus sum.
borrow money (*at interest*), pe-

cūniam faenore accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

both, ambō, -ae, -ō; uterque, -traque, -trumque, *gen.* utrīusque.

both . . . and, et . . . et.

boundaries, fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*

boy, puer, -ī, *m.*

boyhood, aetās puerīlis, aetātis puerilis, *f.*

branches (*of learning*), artēs, -ium, *f. pl.*

Bratuspantium, Brātuspantium, -ī, *n.*

brave, fortis, -e.

bravely, fortiter.

bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

bread, pānis, -is, *m.*

breadth, lātitūdō, -dinis, *f.*

break, frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum.

break camp, castra moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.

break out (*of war*), coörior, -īrī, -ortus sum.

bribe, pecūniā corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum.

bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*

bright, clārus, -a, -um.

bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; (*men*) addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, ductum; (*news*) adferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum.

bring to, adferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum.

bring back, redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.

bring to pass, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

bring up the rear, āgmen claudō, -ere, -sī, -sum.

brilliant, inlūstris, -e.

Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*

broad, lātus, -a, -um.

bronze, aes, aeris, *n.*

brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*

build, aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*a bridge*) faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.

burn, incendō, -ere, -dī, -cēnsum.

burst forth, ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum.

bury, sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultum.

bury oneself in books, sē litterīs abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.

business, negōtium, -ī, *n.*

but, at; autem (*postpositive*); sed; vērum; (= *except*) nisi.

butcher, trucīdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

buy, emō, -ere, ēmī, emptum.

by, ā or ab (*w. abl. of agent*).

by night, noctū.

C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*

Caius, Gāius, -ī, *m.*; *often abbreviated,* C.

call, appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

calmness, with, aequō animō, *abl. m.*

camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*; **pitch camp,** castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum; **break camp,**

castra moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
can, possum, posse, potuī.
cannot but, I, facere nōn possum quīn, *w. subj.*
capital offense, guilty of, reus capitis.
Capuan, Capuēnsis, -is, *m. and f.*
care and thoughtfulness, with, accūrātē cōgitātēque.
carefully, dīligenter.
carnage, clādēs, -is, *f.*
carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
carry out, trānsigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum.
carry to, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *w.* ad *and acc.*
cart, carrus, -ī, *m.*
Carthaginian, Karthāginiēnsis, -is, *m. and f.*
case, causa, -ae, *f.*; **a case is tried**, agitur dē, *w. abl. of the person whose case is tried.*
Cassius, Cassius, -ī, *m.*
cast, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
catch, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
Catiline, Catilīna, -ae, *m.*
Cato, Catō, -ōnis, *m.*
Catullus, Catullus, -ī, *m.*
cause (*verb*), efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *w. obj. clause.*
cause (*noun*), causa, -ae, *f.*
cautious, prūdēns, -entis.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*; equitēs, -um, *m. pl.* [*w. abl.*
cease, dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum,
celebrate, celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **celebrate a triumph**, triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w.* dē *and abl. of person who is triumphed over.*
Celt, Celta, -ae, *m. and f.*
censure (= *judge*), cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, cēnsum.
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*
ceremony, with due, rīte.
certain, a, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *subst.*, *and* quoddam, *adj.*, *gen.* cūiusdam.
Cethegus, Cethēgus, -ī, *m.*
chain, vinculum, -ī, *n.*
change, mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
character, ingenium, -ī, *n.*; **of such a character**, ēius modī.
charge, crīmen, -inis, *n.*
check, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, pressum.
chief, **chief man**, } prīnceps, -ipis, *m.*
children, (*of free parents*), līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*; (*general word*) puerī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
choose, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*
circumstance, rēs, reī, *f.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.*; **my, your**, *etc.*, *fellow-citizens*, meī, tuī, *etc.* cīvēs.
citizenship, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
close the line, āgmen claudō, -ere, -sī, -sum.
clothing, vestis, -is, *f.*
cohort, cohors, -rtis, *f.*
collapse, concidō, -ere, -cidī.
collect, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum; (*an army*) comparō, -āre,

-āvī, -ātum (= *equiȳ*); cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.

come back, reveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.

come off victorious in one's battles, proeliīs secundīs ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum.

come together, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.

Comitia Tributa, comitia tribūta, comitiōrum tribūtōrum, *n. pl.*

Comitium, comitium, -ī, *n.*

command (*verb*), iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iūssum, *w. acc.*; imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w. dat.*; **be in command of,** praesum, -esse, -fuī, *w. dat*; **place in command of,** praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *w. dat. and acc.*

command (*noun*), imperium, -ī, *n.*; **by command of,** iūssū, *abl. m.*

commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*; **commander-in-chief,** summus imperātor.

commend, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

commission, imperium, -ī, *n.*

commit, concipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

common, commūnis, -e.

commonwealth, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*

commotion, raise ... in, tumultum iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *w. dat.*

companion, comes, -itis, *m.*, socius, -ī, *m.*

compare, cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.

compass about, circumclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum.

compel, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.

complete, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

comrade, socius, -ī, *m.*

concern (*verb*), pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *with* ad *and acc*; interest *or* rēfert *w. gen. of the person.*

concern (*noun*), cūra, -ae, *f.*

concerning, dē, *w. abl.*

condition, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*

conduct, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.

confer, mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

confess, fateor, -ērī, fassus sum; cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum.

confusion, tumultus, -ūs, *m.*

conquer, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.

conscientiously, religiōsē.

conscience, a good, cōnscientia bene factī.

conscience, a bad, cōnscientia sceleris.

consent, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*

consequence, be of, interest *or* rēfert, *w. gen. of person.*

consider, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum; **consider virtue the highest good,** summum bonum in virtūte pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.

Considius, Cōnsidius, -ī, *m.*
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
conspirator, coniūrātus, -ī, *m.*
constant, adsiduus, -a, -um.
constantly, semper.
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*
consulship, cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.*
contend, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
contract for, locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
control of the government, get, rērum potior, -īrī, -ītus sum.
convene, convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
convey, adferō *or* dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (adferō *emphasizes the recipient*; dēferō, *the act of removal*).
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, *f.*
Cornelius, Cornēlius, -ī, *m.*
counsel, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
country, (*territory*) ager, -grī, *m.*, usually in *pl.*; (*with the idea of borders prominent, as after words of invasion and entrance*) fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*; (*organized for purposes of government*) cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*; (*native land*) patria, -ae, *f.*; (*the property of the nation*) rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, f.; (*opposed to the city*) rūs, rūris, *n.*; (*geographical division*) terra, -ae, *f.*
countryman, cīvis, -is, *m.*, *usually with possessive*, meus, tuus, *etc.*
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
courageous, fortis, -e.
courier, cursor, ōris, *m.*
course, (*of studies*) ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
court of law, quaestiō lēgitima, quaestiōnis lēgitimae, *f.*
courtesy, hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*
coward, īgnāvus, -ī, *m.*
credit, fidēs, (-ē *and* -eī), *f.*
crime, facinus, -oris, *n.*; scelus, -eris, *n.*
cross, trānseō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
crowds, in, frequēns, -entis.
cruel, crūdēlis, -e.
cruelty, crūdēlitās, -ātis, *f.*
crush, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
cry, conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
cultivate, colō, -ere, -uī, cultum; **cultivate the mind,** animum *or* animōs excolō, -ere, -uī, -cultum.
culture, hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*
cut down, concīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum.
cut off, interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum.

D

dagger, sīca, -ae, *f.*
daily, cotīdiānus, -a, -um.
danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um; (*of ground*) *compar. of* inīquus, -a, -um.
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.
daring, audāx, -ācis.
day, diēs, -ēī, *m.* (*and f.*); **day before** (*in dates*) prīdiē, *w. acc.*; **day before yesterday,** nūdius tertius; **next day,** postrīdiē ēius diēī, *or* posterō diē; (*period of*) **two days,** bīduum, -ī, *n.*; (*period of*) **three days,** trīduum, -ī, *n.*

daybreak, lūx, lūcis, *f.*; **at daybreak,** prīmā lūce.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
death penalty, poena mortis, *f.*; **suffer the death penalty,** morte multārī.
debt, aes aliēnum, aeris aliēnī, *n.*
December, December, -bris, *adj.*
decide, cōnstituō or statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
decision, sententia, -ae, *f.*
decree (*verb*), dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum.
decree of the senate, senātūs cōnsultum, -ī, *n.*
dedicate, dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
deed, factum, -ī, *n.*; (*conspicuous or wicked*), facinus, -oris, *n.*
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defeat, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum; **suffer defeat,** *pass. of* superō.
defect, vitium, -ī, *n.*
defend (from), dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *w.* ab. *and abl.*
defender, dēfēnsor, ~~-ōris~~, *m.*
deliberation, dēlīberatiō, -ōnis, *f.*
delight, dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
deliver (from), līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w. abl.*; **deliver a speech against,** ōrātiōnem habēre in, *w. acc.*
demand, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w. dat. and acc.*; (*earnestly*) pōscō, -ere, popōscī; (*as one's right*) postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
deny, negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
depart, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
departure, profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*
depraved, perditus, -a, -um.
deprive, prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
descend, dēscendō, -ere, -dī, -scēnsum; **be descended,** orior, -īrī, ortus sum.
describe, exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum; nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
desert, relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum; dēserō, -ere, -uī, -sertum.
deserter, perfuga, -ae, *m.*
deserve, dīgnus sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *w. rel. and subj.*
deserving, dīgnus, -a, -um, *w. abl.*
desire (*verb*), cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
desire (*noun*), cupiditās, -ātis, *f.*
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um.
desist, dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum.
despair of, dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
desperate, dēspērātus, -a, -um.
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.
destruction, exitium, -ī, *n.*
determine, dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum.
devastate, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
devote, cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
die, morior, morī, mortuus sum.
differ, differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum.
different from, alius, -a, -um, *gen.* alīus, *w.* ac (atque).
difficult, difficilis, -e.
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, *f.*; **with difficulty,** vix.

dignity, dīgnitās, -ātis, *f.*
direct, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iūssum.
direction, pars, -rtis, *f.*
discover, cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum; reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum.
disgraceful, turpis, -e; **disgraceful deed,** flāgitium, -ī, *n.*
dishonorable, inhonestus, -a,
dislike, invidia, -ae, *f.* [-um.
display, ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*
dispute, dissension, dissēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.*
distinguished, (*important*) amplus, -a, -um; (*well-known*) nōbilis, -e; (*conspicuous*) īnsīgnis, e.
disturb, moveō *and* commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum; perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*
Diviciacus, Dīviciācus, -ī, *m.*
divine, dīvīnus, -a, -um.
do, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum; faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
do harm, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *w. dat.*
do one's duty, in officiō maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
doubt (*verb*), dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
doubt (*noun*), dubium, -ī, *n.*
draw, ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum; **draw up,** īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum.
dread, timeō, -ēre, -uī.
down from, dē, *w. abl.*
drive back, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
drive from, drive out, ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *w.* ex *and abl.*, expellō, -ere, -pulī, pulsum, *w. abl.*
Dumnorix Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*
duty, officium, -ī, *n.*
dwelling, tectum, -ī, *n.*

E

each, each one, quisque, quaeque, quidque, *gen.* cūiusque.
eager, cupidus, -a, -um.
early in the morning, māne.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
education, higher, hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*
effrontery, audācia, -ae, *f.*
Egypt, Aegyptus, -ī, *f.*
eight, octō.
eighteenth, duodēvīcēsimus, -a, -um.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
either...or, aut...aut; vel...vel.
elect (*verb*), creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
elect (*adj.*), dēsīgnātus, -a, -um.
elections, comitia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*; **hold elections,** comitia habēre.
eloquence, ēloquentia, -ae, *f.*
eloquent, ēloquēns, -entis.
else, alius, -a, -ud, *gen.* alīus; **everyone else,** cēterī.
embark, in nāvem *or* nāvīs ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
emergency, tempus, -oris, *n.*
emphatic, vehemēns, -entis.
empire, imperium, -ī, *n.*

employ, ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum.
encounter, congredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *w.* cum *and abl.*
encourage, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
end (*a war*), cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
endure, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
enemy, (*public*) hostis, -is, *m.*, *usually in pl.*; (*personal*) inimīcus, -ī, *m.*
energetic, ācer, ācris, ācre.
enfeeble, dēbilitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
engage in battle, proelium *or* pūgnam committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
engage in rivalry, contendere inter sē.
engaged in, be, versor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
enjoy, ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum; fruor, -ī, frūctus sum, *w. abl.*
enjoyment, voluptās, -ātis, *f.*
enmity, inimīcitia, -ae, *f.*
enormous, ingēns, -entis.
enough, satis, *n.*
enrol, cōnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum; **enrol in the state,** adscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum ad cīvitātem.
enter, ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum; intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum; **enter upon office,** magistrātum inīre.
enthusiasm, studium, -ī, *n.*
entire, ūniversus, -a, -um.
entreaty (prex), precis, *f.*
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
equal, aequus, -a, -um; pār, paris.
equip, ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
err, errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
escape (from), effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, *intrans. or w. acc.*
especially, māximē; **praesertim.**
establish, cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī.
Etruscan, Etruscus, -a, -um.
eulogize, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
evade, vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
even, etiam.
even if, even though, etsī, etiamsī, tametsī.
evening, towards, sub vesperum.
ever, umquam.
ever since I was of age, ab ineunte aetāte.
every, omnis, -e; **every man, every one,** omnēs, *or* quisque, quaeque, quidque, *gen.* cūiusque.
evidence, indicium, -ī, *n.*
evil, malus, -a, -um.
exactly, certē.
exceedingly, vehementer.
excel, praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; praestō, -stāre, -stitī; superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
excellent quality, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
except, nisi.
exchange, commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
exchange glances, inter sē aspicere.
exchange with one another, inter sē dare.

execute, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
exercise, ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*
exhaust, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; **exhausted,** cōnfectus, -a, -um.
exhibit, versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *w.* in *and abl.*
exile (*verb*), expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum (ex cīvitāte).
exile (*noun*), exsilium, -ī, *n.*
existence, vīta, -ae, *f.*
expect, spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
explain, expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
exploits, rēs gestae, rērum gestārum, *f. pl.*
expose, obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *w. acc. and dat.*
express an opinion, sententiam ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
extend, pāteō, -ēre, -uī; **extend to,** pertineō, -ēre, -uī, *w.* ad *and acc.*; (*enlarge*) amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
extol, efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum.
extortion, (pecūniae) repetundae, (pecūniārum) repetundārum.
eye, oculus, -ī, *m.*

F

fact, rēs, reī, *f.* [*w. dat.*
fail, dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus,
fair, (*beautiful*) pulcher, -chra, -chrum; (*suitable*) idōneus, -a, -um.
faithful, fidēlis, -e.
faithfulness, fidēs, (-ē *and* -ēi), *f.*
fall, incidō, -ere, -cidī.
family, familia, -ae, *f.*
famous, clārus, -a, -um; **the famous,** ille, -a, -ud, *gen.* illīus, *postpositive.*
fancy, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
farm, praedium, -ī, *n.*
far, longē.
far from, procul ab, *with abl.*
farther (*adj.*), ulterior, -ius.
fast, celer, -eris, -ere.
father, pater, -tris, *m.*
fault, vitium, -ī, *n.*; culpa, -ae, *f.*
favor, beneficium, -ī, *n.*
fear (*verb*), timeō, -ēre, -uī; (*prudent fear*) metuō, -ere, -uī; (*reverent fear*) vereor, -ērī, -itus sum.
fear (*noun*), metus, -ūs, *m.*; timor, -ōris, *m.* (*The general word is* metus; timor *is especially the fear of future evil.*)
feel, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum; **feel grateful,** grātiās habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; **how feel about,** quem animum suscipere dē.
fellow-citizen, meus, tuus, etc., cīvis, *m.*
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, -grī, *m.*
fiercely, ācriter.
fight, dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
finally, dēnique; tandem.
find, inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum; (*suitable weather*) nancīscor, -ī, nactus *and* nanctus sum; **find out,** cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.
fine, multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
finish, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

first, *adj.*, prīmus, -a, -um; *adv.*, prīmum; **in the first place**, imprīmīs; **first** (*of month*), Kalendae, -arum, f. *pl.*

five, quīnque.

flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī; terga vertō, -ere, -tī, -sum.

fleet, classis, -is, *f.*

flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*; **put to flight**, in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datum.

foe, (public), hostis, -is, *m.*, *usually in pl.*; (*private*) inimīcus, -ī, *m.*

follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum; **follow after**, subsequor; **follow up**, persequor.

follower, socius, -ī, *m.* [illīus.

following, the, ille, -a, -ud, *gen.*

food, cibus, -ī, *m.*

foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*; **at the foot of**, sub *w. abl.*; **to the foot of**, sub *w. acc.*

for, (1) *conj.*, nam; enim (*postpositive*); (2) *prep.* (*after a verb of motion*) ad *or* in *w. acc.*; (= *in behalf of*) prō, *w. abl.*

for, prō, *w. abl.*

for a large sum, māgnī.

for a little while, paulum.

for a long time, diū.

for a small sum, parvī.

for my part, equidem, quidem.

for the future, in reliquum tempus.

for the purpose of, causā *or* grātiā, *following a gen.*

force, (*verb*), cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.

force (*noun*), manus, -ūs, *f.*; praesidium, ī, *n.*; **forces**, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

forced march, māgnum iter, māgnī itineris, *n.*

ford, vadum, -ī, *n.*

forefathers, māiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*

foreign, exterus, -a, -um.

foresee, prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum.

forest, silva, -ae, *f.*

forever, semper.

forget, oblīvīscor, -ī, -lītus sum.

forgive, īgnōscō, -ēre, -nōvī, -nōtum, *w. dat.*

form (*a conspiracy*), faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; (*a plan*) capiō, -ēre, cēpī, captum, *or* ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum.

former, prior, -ius; superior, -ius; (*the former*) ille, -a, -ud, *gen.* illīus.

formerly, ōlim; quondam.

forthwith, statim. [-um.

fortieth, quadrāgēsimus, -a,

fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*

fortified, strongly, mūnītissimus, -a, -um.

fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

fortunate, fortūnātus, -a, -um; fēlīx, -īcis.

fortunately, fēlīciter.

fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*

Forum, forum, -ī, *n.*

foul, nefārius, -a, -um.

found, condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum; **since the founding of the city**, ab urbe conditā.

four, quattuor.

fourth, quartus, -a -um.
free (from) (*verb*), līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w. abl.*
free (from) (*adj.*), līber, -era, -erum, *w.* ab *and abl., or abl. alone.*
free town, mūnicipium, -ī, *n.*
freedom, lībertās, -ātis, *f.*
frequently, saepe.
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um.
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
from, ā, ab; dē; ē, ex, *w. abl.*; **from which,** unde.
front, in . . . of, prō *w. abl.*
full often, persaepe.
full, plēnus, -a, -um.
furnish, *see* **provide.**
furthermore, praetereā.
future, for the, in reliquum tempus.

G

Gabinius, Gabinius, -ī, *m.*
gain (*verb*), (*attain*) cōnsequor, -ī, -cūtus sum; (*a request*) impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; *produce*) pariō, -ere, peperī, partum; (*possession of*) potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *w. abl.*
gain (*noun*), opēs, -um, *f. pl.*; **get gain,** lucrum faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
Galba, Galba, -ae, *m.*
Gallic, Gallicus, -a, -um.
gambler, āleātor, -ōris, *m.*
garland, corōna, -ae, *f.*
garrison, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
gather, (*come together*) conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; (*call together*) convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*an army*) cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; (*equip*) comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Gaul, (*the country*) Gallia, -ae, *f.*; (*inhabitant of Gaul*) Gallus, -ī, *m.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
generously, līberē.
Geneva, Genāva, -ae, *f.*
German, Germānus, -ī, *m.*
get control of the government, rērum potior, -īrī, -ītus sum.
get for nothing, gratiīs accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
get gain, lucrum faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
get into, prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *w.* in *and acc.*
get out of, exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *w.* ex *and abl.*
get out of the way, remove, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
get ready, parō *and* comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
get to sleep, somnum capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
get the better of, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
get together (*an army*), cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
give assistance, opitulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *w. dat.*
give up allegiance, ab officiō dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.

glad, laetus, -a, -um.
glad, be, laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
gladly, libenter.
glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*
go, eō, īre, iī, itum; (*set out*) proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum; **go away,** ābeō; **go down** (*of credit*) dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; **go from,** discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; **go on,** *pass. of* gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum; **go out,** exeō.
god, deus, -ī, *m.*
good, bonus, -a, -um.
good bye, valē, *pl.* valēte.
good name, fāma, -ae, *f.*
goodness, bonitās, -ātis, *f.*
good will, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*
governor, prōpraetor, -ōris, *m.*
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
grandfather, avus, -ī, *m.*
grant, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
granted that, licet; ut; nē, *w. subj.*
grasp, dēprehendō, -ere, -dī, dēprehēnsum.
great, māgnus, -a, -um; (*of men*) *often* summus, -a, -um; **the great,** ille, -a, -ud, *gen.* illīus, *placed after the word with which it agrees;* **great number,** multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
greatly, māgnopere *or* māgnō opere; (*with* rēfert, interest, *etc.*) māgnī.
Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
greedy, cupidus, -a, -um.
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um.
greet, salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
grieve, doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
ground, solum, -ī, *n.*
guard, custōdia, -ae, *f.*; (*protection*) praesidium, -ī, *n.*
guest-friend, hospes, -itis, *m.*
guide, dux, ducis, *m.*
guilty, nocēns, -entis; **guilty conscience,** cōnscientia sceleris; **guilty of a capital offense,** reus capitis.

H

hail, (h)avē, *pl.* (h)avēte.
halt, cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum.
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
hand over, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
handicap, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
handwriting, manus, -ūs, *f.*
Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, *m.*
happen, accidō, -ere, -dī; contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum (*the latter especially of fortunate occurrences*).
happy, (*fortunate*) fēlīx, -īcis; (*glad*) laetus, -a, -um.
harass, lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
hard, difficilis, -e.
hard pressed, be, *pass. of* urgeō, -ēre, ursī.
hardy, fortis, -e.
harm, do harm to, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *w. dat.*
harm (*noun*), dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*
harmony, concordia, -ae, *f.*; **be in harmony with,** cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sensum *w.* cum *and abl.*

hasten, contēndō, -ere, -dī, -tum; mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
hate, ōdī, -isse, ōsūrus.
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; **have respect to,** aspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum.
he, is, ēius; ille, illīus; iste, istīus.
hear (of), audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
heart, cor, cordis, *n.*, ("*first in the hearts of*") amor, -ōris, *m.*
heavy marching order, in, impedītus, -a, -um.
height, altitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
help (*verb*), adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *w. dat.*; iuvō *and* adiuvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w. acc.*
help (*noun*), auxilium, -ī, *n.*
Helvetian, Helvētius, ī, *m.*
hemmed in, be, pass. of circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
her, (*pers.*) *acc. of* ea, ēius; illa, illīus; ista, istīus; (*poss.*) suus, -a, -um; ēius.
Heraclīot, Hēraclīēnsis, -is, *m.* and *f.*
here, hīc; (*hither*) hūc.
hereafter, posteā.
hesitate, dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w. inf.*
hidden, be, lateō, -ēre, -uī.
high, altus, -a, -um; **highest,** altissimus, -a, -um; (*in degree*) summus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, -is, *m.*; **hilltop,** summus collis.
himself (*intensive*), ipse, -a, -um, *gen.* ipsīus; (*reflexive*) suī.
hinder, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
hindrance, impedīmentum, -ī, *n.*
his, suus, -a, -um; ēius.
hither, citerior, -ius.
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī; (*consider*) dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum; habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; **hold back,** contineō.
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*; tēctum, -ī, *n.*; **at home,** domī; **home** (*after verbs of motion*), domum; **from home,** domō.
honor (*verb*), honōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
honor (*noun*), honor, -ōris, *m.*; (*of character*) fidēs (-ē *or* -eī).
hope (*verb*), spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
hope (*noun*), spēs, speī, *f.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
Hortensius, Hortēnsius, -ī, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *m.*
hostile, inimīcus, -a, -um.
hot, calidus, -a, -um.
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -ūs; **at the house of,** ad *or* apud *w. acc.*
how, (*w. adjs. and advs.*) quam; (*of manner or method*) quō modō; quā ratiōne; **how great,** quantus, -a, -um; **how long,** quamdiū *and* quam diū; **how many,** quot; **how often,** quotiēns.
how feel about, quem animum suscipere dē.
however, (*adv.*) quamvīs; (*conj.*) autem, *postpositive.*
huge, ingēns, -entis.
hullo there! heus tibi!

human, hūmānus, -a, -um.
humblest, īnfimus, -a, -um.
hundred, centum.
hurl, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
hurry, contendō, -ere, -dī, -tum.

I

I, ego, meī.
Iccius, Iccius, -ī, *m.*
Ides, Īdūs, -uum, *f. pl.*
if, sī; (*in indirect questions*) num.
if only, dum; modo; dummodo.
ignorant, īnsciēns, -entis.
Illyricum, Īllyricum, -ī, *n.*
imagine, exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
immediately, statim.
immoral, turpis, -e.
immortal, immortālis, -e.
imperfectly, male.
important, be, interest *or* rēfert *w. gen. of person.*
impudently, impudenter.
in, in, *w. abl.*; **in accordance with,** ex, *w. abl.*; **in crowds,** frequēns, -entis; **in early manhood,** ab ineunte aetāte; **in heavy marching order,** impedītus, -a, -um; **in light marching order,** expedītus, -a, -um; **in no wise,** nullō modō; **in other respects,** cētera; **in the midst of,** in *w. abl.*; **in the neighborhood of,** ad *and* circum *w. acc.*
in charge *or* command of, be, praesum, -esse, -fuī, *w. dat.*
in charge *or* command of, place, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *w. dat. and acc.*
in order to, ut, nē, *etc., w. subj.*
inauspicious, nefāstus, -a, -um.
incite to rebellion, sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
inconsistency, mōbilitās et levitās animī.
inconsistent with, be, abhorreō, -ēre, -uī, *w.* ab *and abl.*
incur, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
indulgence, venia, -ae, *f.*
infamous, nefārius, -a, -um.
infantry, peditātus, -ūs, *m.*; peditēs, -um, *m. pl.*
influence (*verb*), addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum; permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
influence (*noun*), auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*
inform (of), certiōrem faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, (*in pass.*) certior fiō, fierī, factus sum, *w.* dē *and abl.*
inhabit, incolō, -ere, -uī, -cultum.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m.*
injure, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *w. dat.*
institution, īnstitūtum, -ī, *n.*
intact, integer, -gra, -grum.
integrity, innocentia, -ae, *f.*
intention, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
interests of the state, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
interfere (with), impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
into, in *w. acc.*

intrust, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum; permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
iron, ferrum, -ī, *n.*
it, is, ea, id, *gen.* ēius.
Italy, Ītalia, -ae, *f.*
its, suus, -a, -um; ēius.

J

January, Iānuārius, -a, -um, *adj.*
javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
join, coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum.
joy, gaudium, -ī, *n.*
judge (*verb*), iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
judge (*noun*), iūdex, -icis, *m.*; praetor, -ōris, *m.*
judgment, sententia, -ae, *f.*
July, Quīnctīlis, -e, *and* Iūlius, -a, -um, *adj.*
Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*
Jura, Iūra, -ae, *m.*
juror, iūdex, -icis, *m.*
just, iūstus, -a, -um.
justice, iūstitia, -ae, *f.*

K

keep back, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
keep from, (*of defense*) arceō, -ēre, -uī, *w.* ab. *and abl.*; (*of restraint*) contineō, -ēre, -uī, *w.* ab. *and abl.*
keep off, arceō, -ēre, -uī, *w.* ab. *and abl.*; prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum. *generally w.* ab. *and abl.*
keep oneself, sē continēre.
kill, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; (*cruelly*) necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*butcher*) trūcīdō, -āre, -āvī, -atum; (*cut to pieces, as in battle*) occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum.
kindness, (*act of kindness*) beneficium, -ī, *n.*, (*of disposition*) clēmentia, -ae, *f.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
knight, eques, -itis, *m.*
know, (*have knowledge*) sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; (*be aware*) sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum; (*have learned*) *perf. tenses of* cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum; **not know,** nesciō, -īre, -īvī.

L

lack, careō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *w. abl.*
land, (*geographical division*) terra, -ae, *f.*; (*territory*) ager, -grī, *m.*, *generally in pl.*; **by land and sea,** terrā marīque.
land, ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, māgnus, -a, -um; **large number,** multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
last (*verb*), maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
last (*adj.*), (*previous*) proximus, -a, -um; (*of a series*), ultimus, -a, -um.
latter, the, hīc, haec, hōc, *gen.* hūius.
law, lēx, lēgis; **of law,** lēgitimus, -a, -um.
lay down arms, ab armīs discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.

lay violent hands on, vim et manūs īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *w. dat.*

lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum; (*a life*) agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum; **lead out,** ēdūcō; **lead up,** subdūcō.

leader (*military*), dux, ducis, *m.*; (*political*) prīnceps, -ipis, *m.*

leadership, prīncipātus, -us, *m.*

learn, discō, -ere, didicī; **learn of** (*discover*), cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum; reperiō, -īre, reppertī, repertum; (*be informed of*) certior fīō, fierī, factus sum, *w.* dē *and abl.*

learned, doctus, -a, -um; ērudītus, -a, -um.

learning, doctrīna, -ae, *f.*

leave, relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum.

left, nothing, nihil reliquī.

legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*

length, longitūdō, -dinis, *f.*

Lentulus, Lentulus, -ī, *m.*

less (*adj.*), minor, -us; (*subst.*) minus, -ōris; (*adv.*) minus.

lest, nē.

let, sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm; patior, -ī, passus sum; **let go,** dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum; **let in,** admittō.

letter, epistula, -ae, *f.*; litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

levy, make a, dīlēctum habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

liberate, līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

liberty, lībertās, -ātis, *f.*

liberal education, receive, optimīs studiīs ērudior, -īrī, -ītus sum.

lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

life, vīta, -ae, *f.*; **(one's) life is at stake,** caput agitur.

light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*; (*artificial light*) lūmen, -inis, *n.*

light marching order, in, expedītus, -a, -um.

like, similis, -e.

likewise, quoque, *postpositive.*

line, (*written*), versus, -ūs, *m.*

line (of battle), aciēs, -ēī, *f.*

linger, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum; (*delay*) moror, -ārī, -ātus sum.

liquidation, solūtiō, -ōnis, *f.*

listen, attendō, -ere, -dī, -tum.

literature, litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

little, a, (*with comparatives*) paulō; **little while, (for) a,** paulum; **too little,** parum.

little book, libellus, -ī, *m.*

live, (*dwell or exist*) vīvō, -ere, vīxī; (*dwell*) habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

lofty, altus, -a, -um.

long, (*space*) longus, -a, -um; **(for a) long (time),** diū.

long ago, iam dūdum, iam prīdem.

longer, no, nōn iam.

look on, aspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

look out, vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
loss, suffer, damnum faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; **loss of civil rights, suffer,** capite dēminuor, -ī, -ūtus sum.
lot, sors, sortis, *f.*
love (*verb*), amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*of friendly love*), dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
love (*noun*), amor, -ōris, *m.*
lovely, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
lover, amātor, -ōris, *m.*

M

madness, furor, -ōris, *m.*
magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
magnificent, praeclārus, -a, -um.
maintain, contendō, -ere, -dī, -tum.
make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; **make a speech,** ōrātiōnem habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; **make overtures to,** sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūm; **make ready,** parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **make trial (of),** experior, -īrī, -pertus sum; **make up one's mind,** statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum; **make war against** *or* **on,** bellum īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *w. dat.*; **make submission to,** *see* **surrender.**
man (*human being*), homō, -inis, *m. and f.*; (*male*) vir, -ī, *m.*; **old man,** senex, senis, *m.*
manage, administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
manhood, in early, ab ineunte aetāte.
Manlius, of; Manliānus, -a, -um.
manner, modus, -ī, *m.*
many, multī, -ae, -a; **very many,** permultī, -ae, -a.
marble, marmor, -oris, *n.*
march, iter faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
march, forced, māgnum iter, māgnī itineris, *n.*
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*
Marius, Marius, -ī, *m.*
Marseilles, Massilia, -ae, *f.*
massacre, caedēs, -is, *f.*
master of, become, potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *w. abl.*
matter, rēs, reī, *f.*
may, licet, -ēre, -uit *and* -itum est, *impers.*
May, Māius, -a, -um, *adj.*
means, modus, -ī, *m.*; ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
meet, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; (*in battle*) congredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *w.* cum *and abl.*
meeting, conventus, -ūs, *m.*; (*of the people*), cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.*
memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*
menace, immineō, -ēre, *w. dat.*
mere, ipse, -a, -um, *gen.* ipsīus.
message, mandātum, -ī, *n.*; nūntius, -ī, *m.*
messenger, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
Messala, Messāla, -ae, *m.*
method, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
midnight, media nox, mediae noctis, *f.*
midsummer, mediā aestās, mediae aestātis, *f.*
mighty, pōtēns, -entis.

mild, lēnis, -e.
mildness, lēnitās, -ātis, *f.*; mānsuētūdō, -dinis, *f.*
mile, mīlle passuum (*or* passūs), *pl.* mīlia passuum, *n.*
Miltiades, Miltiadēs, -is, *m.*
mind, animus, -ī, *m.*; mēns, mentis, *f.*
mine, meus, -a, -um.
miraculously, dīvīnitus.
missile, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
mistaken be, errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **be very much mistaken,** vehementer errāre.
Mithridates, Mithridātēs, -is, *m.*; **against Mithridates,** Mithridāticus, -a, -um.
mob, turba, -ae, *f.*
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
moon, lūna, -ae, *f.*
more (*noun*), plūs, plūris; (*adj.*) plūrēs, -a (*pl. only*); (*adv.*) amplius; magis; plūs.
moreover, autem, *postpositive.*
morning, in the, māne.
most, (*adv.*) māximē.
mother, māter, -tris, *f.*
mourn, see **grieve.**
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum; **move in the midst of,** *etc.*, versor, -ārī, -atus sum, *w.* in *and abl.*
much, (*adj.*) multus, -ā, -um; (*adv.*) multō (*with comparatives*); multum (*of extent*); **very much,** vehementer.
Mulvian, Mulvius, -a, -um.
murder, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
must, use pass. periphrastic, *or* oportet, -ēre, -uit; necesse est.
my, meus, -a, -um.
myself, (*intensive*) ipse, -a, -um, *gen.* ipsīus; (*reflexive*) *oblique cases of* ego.

N

name (*verb*), nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
name (*noun*), nōmen, -inis, *n.*; **good name,** fāma, -ae, *f.*
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
nation, (*foreign*) gēns, -entis, *f.*; nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*; (*Roman or foreign*), populus, -ī, *m.*
native land, patria, -ae, *f.*
naught left, nihil reliquī.
near, ad *or* apud, *w. acc.*
nearest, proximus, -a, -um.
nearly, ferē; paene.
necessary, necessārius, -a, -um; **it is necessary,** *use passive periphrastic or* oportet, -ēre, -uit; necesse est.
need, opus *or* ūsus, *w. dat. of person and abl. of thing needed.*
neighborhood of, to the, ad, *w. acc.*
neglect one's duty, ab officiō discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
neither . . . nor, neque (nec) . . . neque (nec); (*in final sentences*) nēve (neu).
Nepos, Nepōs, -ōtis, *m.*
Nervii, Nerviī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
never, numquam.
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um.
news, nūntius, -ī, *m.*

next, proximus, -a, -um; **next day,** postrīdiē ēius diēī *or* posterō diē.

night, nox, noctis, *f.*; **by night,** noctū.

nightly, nocturnus, -a, -um.

no, nōn; nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* nūllīus.

no one, nēmō, -inis, *m. and f.*

none, nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* nūllīus; nihil.

Nones, Nōnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

nor, *see* **neither.**

not, nōn; (*in questions*) nōnne? **not at all,** minimē; **not even,** nē . . . quidem, *separated by emphatic word*; **not yet,** nōndum; **not only . . . but also;** nōn { modo / sōlum } . . . { sed / vērum } etiam.

not wish, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.

notable, praeclārus, -a, -um.

nothing, nihil; **get for nothing,** grātiīs accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

notice, cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.

now, iam; nunc; **now and then,** interdum; **now for a long time,** iam prīdem; iam dūdum.

number, numerus, -ī, *m.*, **great** *or* **large number,** multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*

O

O that, utinam; (*neg.*) utinam nē.

oath, iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n., only in sing.*

obedient, dictō audiēns, *w. dat.*

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī, *w. dat.*

oblige, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.

observe, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum.

obtain, cōnsequor, -ī, -cūtus sum; **obtain for,** impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w. dat.*

occupy (*embarrass*), impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

ocean, Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*

odium, invidia, -ae, *f.*

of (*when it means concerning*), dē, *w. abl.*

of this sort, ēius modī.

offend, offendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsum.

offer, offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum; **offer thanks,** grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.

office, honor, -ōris, *m.*; **remove from office,** mūnus abrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w. dat.*

often, saepe; **full often,** persaepe.

old, vetus, -eris; **old man,** senex, senis, *m.*

old-time, prīstinus, -a, -um; **of the olden time,** antīquus, -a, -um.

Olympia, Olympia, -ae, *f.*

omit, praetermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

on, in, *with abl.*

on account of, (1) ob *or* propter *with acc.*; (2) *abl. of cause*; (3) causā *or* grātiā *following a gen.*; **on account of which fact,** quam ob rem.

on the understanding that, ut, ita ut, (*neg.*) nē, ut nē, *w. subj.*
once, ōlim.
one, ūnus, -a, -um, *gen.* ūnīus; **one** (*of two*), alter, -era, -erum, *gen.* alterius; (*a certain one*), quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *gen.* cūiusdam ; **one . . . another,** alius . . . alius.
one another, with, inter sē.
only, (*adj.*) sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* sōlīus; ūnus, -a, -um, *gen.* ūnīus; (*adv.*) sōlum; tantum; (*with* nōn) modo.
open, aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertum.
opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.*
opportunity, facultās, -ātis, *f.*; occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*; potestās, -ātis, *f.*
or, aut; vel; (*in double questions*) an; **or (if),** sīve (seu); **or not,** annōn; necne.
orator, ōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
oratorical ability, ōrātiō et facultās.
ordain, cōnstituō, -ēre, -uī, -ūtum.
order (*verb*), iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iūssum.
order (*noun*), ōrdō, -inis, *m.*
Orgetorix, Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*
other, (1) (*any*) **other,** alius, -a, -ud, *gen.* alīus; (2) (*the*) **other** (*of two*), alter, -era, -erum, *gen.* alterius; (3) **the other,** cēterus, a, -um; reliquus, -a, -um.
otherwise, aliter.
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; oportet, -ēre, -uit, *impers.*
our, ours, noster, -tra, -trum; **our men,** nostrī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
out of, ex, ē, *w. abl.*
outcome, ēventus, -ūs, *m.*; **the outcome is that,** ēvenit ut, *w. subj.*
outside, extrā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*
over, (*bridge——river*), in *with abl.*
overcome, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
overhear, exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
overlook, neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
overwhelmed, abiectus, -a, -um.
owe, dēbeō, -ēre, -ūi, -itum.
own, *the various possessives* meus, tuus, *etc., sometimes emphasized by the addition of* ipsīus, ipsōrum, ipsārum.

P

pack, sarcinae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
pains, *pl. of* labor, -ōris, *m.*
Palatine, Palātium, -ī, *n.*
pale, pallidus, -a, -um.
palisade, vāllum, -ī, *n.*
pardon, īgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *w. dat.*
part, pars, -rtis, *f.*
particular, certus, -a, -um.
partly, partim.
parvenu, novus homō, novī hominis, *m.*
pass, (*a law*), ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum ; **pass a vote of thanks,**

grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum; **pass out of,** excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *w.* ex *and abl.*; **pass over,** omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

patrimony, rēs familiāris, reī familiāris, *f.*

patriotic, patriae amāns, -antis.

patrol, vigilia, -ae, *f.*

pay, pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum; (*money*) solvō, -ere, -vī, solūtum; **pay the penalty,** poenās pendere.

payment, solūtiō, -ōnis, *f.*

peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*

peasant, rūsticus, -ī, *m.*

Peloponnese, Peloponnēsus, -ī, *f.*

pen, penna, -ae, *f.*

penalty, poena, -ae, *f.*

people, (1) (*nation*) populus, -ī, *m.*, gēns, gentis, *f.*; (2) **people,** (*in general*) hominēs, -um, *m. and f. pl.*

perfect, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

perform, praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitum.

perhaps, fortasse.

peril, perīculum, -ī, *n.*

perish, pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum.

permanent court, quaestiōnēs perpetuae, quaestiōnum perpetuārum, *f. pl.*

permitted, be, licet, -ēre, -uit *and* -itum est, *impers.*

perpetrate, committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

Persian, Persa, -ae, *m.*

persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *w. dat.*

pirate, praedō, -ōnis, *m.*

Piso, Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.*

pitch, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.

place, locus, -ī, *m.*

place at the head of, in charge of *or* **in command of,** praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *w. dat. and acc.*

plain, campus, -ī, *m.*; plānitiēs, -ēī, *f.*

plan (*verb*), cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

plan (*noun*), cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*

plead a case, causam dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.

pleasant, iūcundus, -a, -um.

please, dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *w. dat.*; (= *if you please*) quaesō, *parenthetical.*

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.

pleasure, laetitia, -ae, *f.*

plebiscitum, plēbiscītum, -ī, *n.*

pledge, fidēs, (-ē *and* -eī), *f.*

plot against, īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus sum, *w. dat.*

plunder, dīripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum.

poem, carmen, -inis, *n.*; poēma, -atis, *n.*

poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*

poetry, of, poēticus, -a, -um.

polite accomplishments, līberālia studia, līberālium studiōrum, *n. pl.*

political and personal influence, auctōritās et grātia.

politics, rēs pūblica, reī pūbli-

cae, *f.*; **enter politics,** ad rem pūblicam adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.

Pompey, Pompēius, -ī, *m.*

poor, poor man, pauper, -eris.

position, (*rank*) dignitās, -ātis, *f.*; (*locality*) locus, -ī, *m.*

possess, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

possessions, bona, -ōrum, *n. pl.*; **all my, your,** *etc.*, **possessions,** mea, tua, *etc.*, omnia.

possession of, take, potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *w. abl.*

poverty, paupertās, -ātis, *f.*

power, potestās, -ātis, *f.*; imperium, -ī, *n.*; **royal power,** rēgnum, -ī, *n.*

powerful, potēns, -entis.

practice, exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

Praeneste, Praeneste, -is, *n. and f.*

praetor, praetor, -ōris, *m.*

praetorship, praetūra, -ae, *f.*

praise (*verb*), laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

praise (*noun*), laus, -dis, *f.*

precisely at, ad, *w. acc.*

prefer, anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *w. acc. and dat.*

preparation, comparātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

prepare (for), parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*of studies*) īnfōrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w.* ad *and acc.*

present, dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

present, dōnum, -ī, *n.*; mūnus, -eris, *n.*

present, be, adsum *and* praesum, -esse, -fuī.

preserve, servō *and* cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

preside over, praesum, -esse, -fuī, *w. dat.*

prestige, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*

prevent, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

principles of conduct, ratiōnēs (-um) vītae, *f. pl.*

previous, the, proximus, -a, -um.

pride, superbia, -ae, *f.*

prison, carcer, -eris, *m.*; **prison for life,** vincula sempiterna, vinculōrum sempiternōrum, *n. pl.*; **prisoner,** reus, -ī, *m.*

private citizen, prīvātus, -ī, *m.*

proclamation, ēdictum, -ī, *n.*

promise, polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum; prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum. [in sententiam.

proposal, support a, pedibus īre

propose (*a law*), rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **propose a capital trial against,** ferre dē capite, *w. gen. of the defendant.*

protect, *see* **defend.**

protection, praesidium, -ī, *n.*; **commit oneself to the protection of,** in fidem veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, *w. gen.*; **pledge the protection of the state,** fidem pūblicam dō, dare, dedī, datum; **take under one's protection,** in fidem accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

provided that, dum.

province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*

public business, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*

public life, enter, ad rem pūblicam adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.

public meeting, cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.*
public office, honor, -ōris, *m.*
public weal, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
Pullo, Pullō, -ōnis, *m.*
Punic, Pūnicus, -a, -um.
punish, poenam sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *w.* dē *and abl.*; suppliciīs adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum; (*chastise*) pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; **punish by death,** morte multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
punishment, poena, -ae, *f.*; supplicium, -ī, *n.*
purpose, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
pursue, persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
pursuit, studium, -ī, *n.*
put to death, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
put to flight, in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datum.
suffer punishment, poenās pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum; suppliciīs adficior, -ī, -fectus sum.

Q

quickly, celeriter.
Quintus, Quīntus, ī, *m.*
quite the contrary, immō vērō.

R

raid, incursiō, -ōnis, *f.*
raise, efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum.
rank, ōrdō, -dinis, *m.*
rashly, temerē.
rashness, temeritās, -ātis, *f.*
rather, potius; (= *somewhat*) *use the comparative.*
ravage, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; dīripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum.
reach, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* ad, *except with names of towns, etc.*; (*attain*) attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum.
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum; (*aloud*) recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reason, causa, -ae, *f.*
realize, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum.
really, vērē.
rebellion, tumultus, -ūs, *m.*
recall, revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; *also* recipiō, *particularly of taking again.*
reckon, (*consider*) dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
recompense, grātiam referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
record, prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
refined, **refining** } hūmānus, -a, -um.
refuse, recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
region, pars, -rtis, *f.*
reign, rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reinforcement(s), subsidium, -ī, *n.*
reject, removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
rejoice, gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum.
relate, prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum; nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
religious scruple, religiō, -ōnis, *f.*

remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum; **it remains that,** restat ut, *w. subj.*

remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.

remember, meminī, -isse; recordor, -ārī, -ātus sum; memoriā teneō, -ēre, -uī.

Remi, Rēmī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

remind (of), admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum *w. gen. or* dē *and abl.*

remove from office, mūnus abrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w. dat.*

render, reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.

renew, redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

renown, laus, -dis, *f.*; nōbilitās, -ātis, *f.*

renowned, nōbilis, -e; clārus, -a, -um.

repair, reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

repeal, abrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

repent, paenitet, -ēre, -uit, impers., *w. acc. of person and gen. of thing.*

reply, respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsum.

report, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum; nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

represent, (= *assert*) doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum (*w. two acc.*).

reproach, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

repulse, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.

request, gain a, impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

rescue, (*by force*) ēripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum; (*preserve*) servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

reserve, subsidium, -ī, *n.*

resign, sē abdicāre ab, *w. abl.*

resist, resistō, -ere, -stiti, *w. dat*; (*withstand*) sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.

resolute, fortis, -e.

resolve upon, statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.

respect, honor, -ōris, *m.*

respect to, have, aspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum.

rest (of), cēterus, -a, -um; reliquus, -a, -um.

restrain, coërceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

retreat, (*in good order*) recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *w. reflex.*; (*be forced back*) pedem referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum; (*take to flight*) fugiō, -ere, fūgī.

return (*give back*), reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.

return (*go or come back*), redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, revertor, -ī, revertī *and* reversus sum.

review, recolō, -ere, -uī, -cultum.

revolution, novae rēs, novārum rērum, *f. pl.*; **desire a revolution,** novīs rēbus studeō, -ēre, -uī.

reward, mūnus, -eris, *n.*; praemium, -ī, *n.*

Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*

right, iūs, iūris, *n.*; (*permitted by the gods*) fās, *indecl.*

rightly, iūre.

river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*

road, via, -ae, *f.*
rob, spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
Rostra, rōstra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
rout, in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datum.
route, iter, itineris, *n.*
royal power, rēgnum, -i, *n.*
rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum.
rush, contendō, -ere, -dī, -tum; **rush out,** ērumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum.

S

safe, salvus, -a, -um ; (*protected*) tūtus, -a, -um.
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
sage, sapiēns, -entis.
said he (*introducing direct discourse*), inquit, *pl.* inquiunt. Inquam *and other forms are found. See any Latin dictionary.*
Sallust, Sallustius, -ī, *m.*
same, the, īdem, eadem, idem, *gen.* ēiusdem; **to the same place,** eōdem.
Saturnalia, Sāturnālia, -ium, *n. pl.*
save (*verb*), servō *and* cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
save (= *except*), nisi.
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; (*to introduce direct discourse*) inquit, *pl.* inquiunt, *placed after one or more words of the quotation;* **as I say, as you say, as he says, as they say,** ut āiō, ut ais, ut ait, ut āiunt ; **say . . . not,** negō, -āre, -āvī -ātum.
Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*
scoundrel, sceleratus, -ī, *m.*
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
seal, sīgnum, -ī, *n.*
second, secundus, -a, -um.
secure, fīrmo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
see, see to it, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.
seeing that, cum; quoniam.
seek, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
seem, videor, -ērī, vīsus sum.
seemly, decōrus, -a, -um.
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
select, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
self-control, temperantia, -ae, *f.*
self-controlled, moderātus, -a, -um; temperāns, -antis.
self-indulgent, intemperāns, -antis.
sell, vendō, -ere, -didī; (*in pass.*) **be sold,** vēneō, -īre, -iī.
Sempronius, Semprōnius, -ī, *m.*
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
senate-house, cūria, -ae, *f.*
senators (*official title*), patrēs cōnscrīptī, patrum cōnscrīptōrum, *m. pl.*
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum; **send ahead,** praemittō; **send away,** dīmittō.
sentence to loss of civil rights, capitis damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w. acc.*
sentinels, vigilia, -ae, *f., generally in pl.*
September, September, -bris, *adj.*
Sequanian, Sēquanus, -ī, *m.*

seriousness, gravitās, -ātis, *f.*
serve, serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *w. dat.*
sesterce, sēstertius, -ī, *gen. pl.*, -ium, *m.*
set forth, expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
set out, proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum.
set sail, nāvibus proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum.
set up, (*literally*) conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum ; (*figuratively*) cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
settle, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
seven, septem.
several, aliquot.
severe, gravis, -e ; sevērus, -a, -um.
severity, sevēritās, -ātis, *f.*
sharer, particeps, -cipis, *m.*
sharing, particeps, -cipis.
sharply, ācriter.
shatter, frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum.
she, ea, ēius ; illa, illīus ; ista, istīus.
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
shoot, mittō, -ere, mīsi, missum.
shop, taberna, -ae, *f.*
shopkeeper, tabernārius, -ī, *m.* ; caupō, -ōnis, *m.*
short, brevis, -e.
shout (*verb*), conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum ; (*loudly or repeatedly*) clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
shout, shouting, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
show, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum ; ostendō, -ere, -dī, -tum.
shrewd, callidus, -a, -um ; prūdēns, -entis.
shrewdness, prūdentia, -ae, *f.*
shun, vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.
side, latus, -eris, *n.*
side with, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *w.* cum *and abl.*
sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*
signal, sīgnum, -ī, *n.*
silent, be, taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
silent, become, conticēscō, -ere, -ticuī.
silver, argentum, -ī, *n.*
sin, nefās, *indecl.*
since (*prep.*), post, *w. acc.*
since (*conj.*), cum ; quoniam.
sink, dēprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
sit up, vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
six, sex.
six hundredth, sēscentēsimus, [-a, -um.
sixteenth, sextus (-a, -um) decimus, -a, -um.
sixth, sextus, -a, -um.
size, māgnitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
skill, ars, artis, *f.*
skilful, skilled, perītus, -a, -um.
skin, pellis, -is, *f.*
slain, interfectus, -a, -um.
slaughter, caedēs, -is, *f.*
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*
slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*
slay, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
sleep, dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum ;

get to sleep, fall asleep, somnum capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
so, tam; ita; **and so,** itaque.
so far from (its being true) that . . . that, tantum abest ut . . . ut.
so great, tantus, -a, -um.
so long as, dum; modo; dummodo.
so many, tot.
so much, tam.
so often, totiēns.
so that, ut.
soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*
some, someone, something, (1) aliquis, -qua, -quid, *subst.*, *and* -quod, *adj.*, *gen.* alicūius; (2) (*more definite*) nōnnūllus, -a, -um; (3) (= *certain*) quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *subst.*, *and* quoddam, *adj.*, *gen.* cūiusdam.
sometime, aliquandō.
sometimes, interdum; nonnumquam.
somewhat, nōnnihil.
son, fīlius, -i, *m.*
soon, mox.
sooner, mātūrius.
sorrow, dolor, -ōris, *m.*
sorry, be, doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
sort, modus -ī, *m.*; **what sort of,** quālis, -e; cūius modī; **this sort of,** tālis, ēius modī.
sovereignty, imperium, -ī, *n.*
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, *f.*
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum, *w. dat.*
Spartan, Lacedaemonius, -ī, *m.*
speak, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; loquor, -ī, -cūtus sum.
spear, hasta, -ae, *f.*
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis *f.*; **make a speech,** ōrātiōnem habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
speed, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*; vēlōcitās, -ātis, *f.*
spend money on, sūmptum faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, *w.* in *and acc.*
spring (*noun*), vēr, vēris, *n.*; **at the beginning of spring,** ineunte vēre.
spring from, orior, -īrī, ortus sum.
stage, gradus, -ūs, *m.*
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, statum; (*endure*) patior, -ī, passus sum.
start, proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum.
state (*as an organization or political unit*), cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*; (*as the possession of the people*) rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
station, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
Stator, Stator, -ōris, *m.*
statue, statua, -ae, *f.*
stature, corpus, -oris, *n.*
stay, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
still, etiam nunc.
stir up, excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
stone, lapis, -idis, *m.*
stop, (*hold back*) dētineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum; (*hinder*) impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
storm, hiems, -is, *f.*

stranger, īgnōtus, -ī, *m.*
strife, discordia, -ae, *f.*
strike into, iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *w. acc. and dat.*
strip, nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
stripling, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*
strive, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; **strive for,** labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
strongest, be, plūrimum valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
strongly fortified, mūnītissimus, -a, -um.
study (*verb*), colō, -ere, -uī, cultum.
study (*noun*), studium, -ī, *n.*; **studies,** doctrīna, -ae, *f.*
stupid, stultus, -a, -um.
style, genus, -eris, *n.*
subdued, pācātus, -a, -um.
subject, rēs, reī, *f.*; **subject for composition,** rēs ad scrībendum.
successful, fēlīx, -īcis.
such, of such a character, tālis, -e; ēius modī; (*so great*) tantus, -a, -um; **such . . . as,** tālis . . . quālis; **such** *or* **so important,** tantus.
suddenly, subitō.
suffer, (*endure*) ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; (*allow*) patior, -ī, passus sum; *w. word for* "*harm,*" capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; **suffer defeat,** *pass. of* superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **suffer loss of civil rights,** capite dēminuor, -ī, -ūtus sum; **suffer the death penalty,** morte multor, -ārī, -ātus sum; **suffer punishment,** poenās pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum; suppliciīs adficior, -ī, -fectus sum.
sufficient, satis.
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
Sulla, Sulla, -ae, *m.*
sum, for a large, māgnī.
summer, aestās, -ātis, *f.*
summon, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w.* ad *and reflex.*; (*the senate*) convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **summon to court,** in iūdicium vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
supply, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
support, subsidium, -ī, *n.*
support a proposal, pedibus īre in sententiam.
suppose, be sure, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
surely, certē; profectō.
surpass, antecēdō *and* praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
surrender (*verb*), dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *w. reflex.*
surrender (*noun*), dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
surround, circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *w. acc. and dat., or abl. and acc.*
survive, supersum, -esse, -fuī, *w. dat.*
survivors, iī quī supersunt.
suspicion, suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.*
swarms, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
swear, iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sweet, dulcis, -e.

swift, celer, -eris, -ere; vēlōx, -ōcis.
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*
system of philosophy, disciplīna, -ae, *f.*
systematic training provided by a liberal education, ratiō cōnfōrmātiōque doctrīnae.

T

table (*of laws*), tabula, -ae, *f.*
tablet, tabula, -ae, *f.*; (*voting*) testula, -ae, *f.*
take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum; (*of persons*) dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum; (*by storm*) expūgnō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum; **take across,** trādūcō; **take away,** ēdūcō; (*by force*), ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum; **take from,** adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum; **take measures** *or* **pains,** operam dō, dare, dedī, datum; **take possession of,** potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *w. abl.*; **take thought for,** cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -sultum, *w. dat.*; **take to heart,** graviter ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; **take to one's heels,** terga vertō, -ere, -tī, -sum; **take upon oneself,** sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *w. dat. of reflex.*
talent, ingenium, -ī, *n.*
talk, loquor, -ī, -cūtus sum.
tarry, commoror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
tear, lacrima, -ae, *f.*
tell, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
tempest, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*
temple, templum, -ī, *n.*
ten, decem.
tend to, pertineō, -ēre, -uī; *w.* ad *and acc.*
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terminate by treaty, compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
terms, condiciōnēs, -um, *f. pl.*
terribly, vehementer.
territory, fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
terror, metus, -ūs, *m.*; terror, -ōris, *m.*
than, quam; ac.
thanks, offer *or* **give,** grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
thanksgiving, supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
that, (1) (*dem. pron.*) ille, -a, -ud, *gen.* illīus; is, ea, id, *gen.* ēius; (2) (*rel. pron.*) quī, quae, quod, *gen.* cūius; (3) (*conj.*) ut; (*after verbs of fearing*) nē; **that . . . not,** nē; (*after verbs of fearing*) ut; nē nōn; **that of yours,** iste, -a, -ud, *gen.* istīus; **that yonder,** ille.
the one . . . the other, alter . . . alter.
the outcome is that, ēvenit ut, *w. subj.*
their, theirs, suus, -a, -um; eōrum, eārum.
Themistocles, Themistoclēs, -is, *m.*
then, tum; (*of a series*) deinde.
theoretical knowledge, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
there, ibi; (=*thither*) eō.

there is no reason why, nihil est quod, *w. subj.*
there is the additional circumstance that, accēdit ut, *w. subj.*
therefore, (*logical*) igitur, *generally postpositive* (*causal*) quā rē; (=*accordingly*) itaque.
thereupon, tum.
thickness, crassitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*, *or neuter pron. or adj.*
think, putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum; **think of,** cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
third, tertius, -ā, -um.
thirty, trīgintā.
this, hīc, haec, hōc, *gen.* hūius.
thorough, dīligēns, -entis.
though, *see* **although.**
thought, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
thousand, mīlle; *pl.* mīlia, -ium, *n.*
threaten, immineō, -ēre, *w. dat.*
three, trēs, tria; **three days,** trīduum, -ī, *n.*; **three hundred,** trecentī, -ae, -a.
throne, rēgnum, ī, *n.*
through, per *with acc.*
throw, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum; **throw away,** abiciō.
thrust out, ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
till, (*conj.*) dum; (*prep.*) ad, *w. acc.*
thus, sīc.
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*
tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.
Titurius, Titurius, -ī, *m.*
to, ad *with acc.*; in *with acc.*; **to another place,** aliō; **to the foot of,** sub *with acc.*; **to the neighborhood of,** ad *with acc.*; **to some place,** aliquō; **to the same place,** eōdem.
to-day, hodiē hodiernō diē.
tomb, sepulcrum, -ī, *n.*
to-morrow, crās.
too, nimis, *or use the comparative*; **too little,** parum; **too much,** nimis.
together (with), ūnā, *w.* cum *and abl.*
tower, turris, -is, *f.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*; **free town,** mūnicipium, -ī, *n.*
traitor, prōditor -ōris, *m.*
transact, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
transfer, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
treason, prōditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
treat, tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **treat of,** attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum; **treat with,** agō, ere, ēgī, āctum, *w.* cum. *and abl.*
trial, iūdicium, -ī, *n.*
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
trip, iter, itineris, *n.*
triumph, triumphus, -ī, *m.*; **celebrate a triumph,** triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*; mīlitēs, -um, *m. pl.*
troublesome, molestus, -a, -um.
true, vērus, -a, -um.
truly, vērē.

trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.*
trust, cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum, *w. dat.*
trusty, certus, -a, -um.
try, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
twelve, duodecim.
two, duo, -ae, -o; **two days,** bīduum, -ī, *n.*; **two years,** biennium, -ī, *n.*
type of mind, facultās ingenī.
tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, *m.*

U

unacquainted with, be nesciō, -īre, -īvī.
undergo, subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
understanding, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
undertake a case, causam recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
unequal, impār, -paris.
unfortunate, miser, -era, -erum.
unharmed, incolumis, -e.
unite, coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum.
unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis, -e.
unpopularity, invidia, -ae, *f.*
unsuspectingly, inopīnāns, -antis.
unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
upon, in, *w. abl.*
upright, innocēns, -entis.
urge, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
use (*verb*), ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*
use (*noun*), ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
useful, ūtilis, -e.
utmost, summus, -a, -um.

V

valiant, fortis, -e.
valiantly, fortiter.
valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
valuable, pretiōsus, -a, -um.
vanquish, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
Veneti, Venetī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
venture, *see* **dare.**
Verres, Verrēs, -is, *m.*
verse, versus, -ūs, *m.*
very, *use the superlative*; **the very,** (*intensive*), ipse, -a, -um, *gen.* ipsīus; **very many,** permultī, -ae, -a; **very much,** vehementer.
very, *use the superlative.*
veto, vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum.
view, sententia, -ae, *f.*
victor, victor, -ōris, *m.*
victorious, victor, -ōris.
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
violence, vīs, *acc.* vim, *abl.* vī, *f.*
violent hands on, lay, vim et manūs īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *w. dat.*
violently, vehementer.
virtuous, (*of conduct*) honestus, -a, -um.
visit with, adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
Volturcius, Volturcius, -ī, *m.*
Vorenus, Vorēnus, -ī, *m.*
vote (*verb*), (*express judgment*) cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, cēnsum; (*decree*) dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum; **give or cast one's**

vote, (*of the senate*) sententiam dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; (*of the people*), suffrāgium ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.

vote,
voting-tablet, } suffrāgium, -ī, *n.*

W

wage (against), gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, *w.* cum *and abl.*

wait, wait for, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*

war, bellum, -ī, *n.*; **make war,** bellum īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *w. dat.*; **wage** *or* **carry on war,** bellum gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, *w.* cum *and abl.*; **finish a war,** bellum cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

warn, moneō, -ere, -uī, -itum.

watch (*verb*), custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

watch (*noun*), vigilia, -ae, *f.*

way, via, -ae, *f.*; (*manner*) modus, -ī, *m.*; ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*

we, nōs, nostrī *and* nostrum.

weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*

weary, dēfessus, -a, -um.

weather, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*

weight, pondus, -eris, *n.*

welfare, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*; **highest welfare of the state,** summa rēs pūblica.

well, bene.

what, (1) (*rel.*) quī, quae, quod, *gen.* cūius; (2) (*interr.*) quis, (quae), quid, *subst.*, *and* quod, *adj.*, *gen.* cūius; (= *that which*) id quod; **what in the world,** quid tandem.

what sort of, quālis, -e; cūius modī.

when, cum, ubi; (*interr.*) quandō.

whence, unde.

where, ubi; (= *whither*) quō; **from where,** unde.

wherefore, quā rē.

whether, num; (*in alternative questions*) utrum, -ne; (*in alternative conditions*) sīve (seu).

whew! ō!

which, (1) (*rel.*) quī, quae, quod, *gen.* cūius; (2) (*interr.*) quis, (quae), quid, *subst.*, *and* quod, *adj.*, *gen.* cūius; **which (of two),** uter, -tra, -trum, *gen.* utrīus.

whither, quō.

who, (1) (*rel.*) quī, quae, quod, *gen.* cūius; (2) (*interr.*) quis, (quae), quid, *subst.*, *and* quod, *adj.*, *gen.* cūius.

whole (of), tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.* tōtius; **whole world,** orbis (-is) terrārum, *m.*

why, cūr, quid.

wicked, impius, -a, -um.

wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*

will, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*

willing, be, volō, velle, voluī.

willingly, libenter.

win, cōnsequor, -ī, -cūtus sum.

winter, hiems, -is, *f.*

winter quarters, hīberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.* (*sc.* castra).

wisdom, (*shrewdness*) prūdentia, -ae, *f.*; (*general word*) sapientia, -ae, *f.*

wise, sapiēns, -entis.

wisely, sapienter.

wish, volō, velle, voluī; cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; **not wish,** nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.

with, cum, *w. abl.*; **with one another,** inter sē.

withdraw, concēdō *and* discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; **withdraw from battle,** proeliō excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.

within, in *with abl.*; intrā *with acc.*

without, sine; **without the command,** iniūssū; **be without,** careō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *w. abl.*

withstand, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.

witness, testis, -is, *m.*

woman, mulier, -eris, *f.*

wonder, mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum.

word, verbum, -ī, *n.*, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

world (the whole), orbis (-is) terrārum, *m*; **what in the world,** quid tandem ?

worship, colō, -ere, -uī, cultum.

worth, worthy, dīgnus, -a, -um, *w. abl.*

worth one's while, be, tantī esse, *w. dat.*

wound (*verb*), vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

wound (*noun*), vulnus, -eris, *n.*

wrath, īra, -ae, *f.*

wretched, miser, -era, -erum.

write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scriptum; **write out,** perscrībō.

wrong (*verb*), iniūriam īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *w. dat.*

wrong (*noun*), iniūria, -ae, *f.*; **no wrong, nothing of wrong,** nihil malī.

wrought up, be, *pass.* of perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -atūm.

X

Xerxes, Xerxēs, -is, *m.*

Y

year, annus, -ī, *m.*

yesterday, herī; hesternō diē.

yet, tamen.

yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum.

yonder, see **that.**

you, (1) (*sing.*) tū, tuī; (2) (*pl.*) vōs, vestrī *and* vestrum.

younger, minor nātū.

your, (*of one person*) tuus, -a, -um; (*of more than one*) vester, -tra, -trum.

youth, adulēscēns, -entis, *m. and f.*

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

BOOK TWO

Words occurring in Book One are not, as a rule, inserted here.

VOCABULARY I

against, contrā, *w. acc.*; in *w. acc.*

alarm, timor, -ōris, *m.*

at all, omnīnō.

decree, dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum.

disturb, move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.

drive from, ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *w.* ex *and abl.*

effrontery, audācia, -ae, *f.*

endure, stand, patior, -ī, passus sum.

garrison, praesidium, -ī, *n.*

harm, dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*

how, quam.

how long, quam diū.

if, sī; *in indir. quest.*, num.

nightly, nocturnus, -a, -um.

or, aut, vel; **whether . . . or,** utrum . . . an; **or not,** annōn, necne.

suffer (*harm*), capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.

true, vērus -a, -um.

what, (1) (*rel*) quī, quae, quod, *gen.* cūius; (2) (*interr.*) quis, (quae,) quid, *subst., and* quod, *adj., gen.* cūius; (= *that which*), id quod; **what in the world** quid tandem.

VOCABULARY II

acknowledge, fateor, -ērī, fassus sum *and* cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum.

afraid of, be, timeō, -ēre, -uī.

any one, (*in negative sentences*) quisquam, quidquam *and* quicquam, *gen.* cūiusquam.

arrest, comprehendō, -ere, -dī, -prehēnsum.

assassinate, execute, kill, put to death, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

behold, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.

find, inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.

not even, nē . . . quidem, *separated by the emphatic word or words.*

not only . . . but also, nōn { modo / sōlum } . . . { sed / vērum } etiam.

realize, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum.

rightly, iūre.

say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum;

say . . . not, negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*

VOCABULARY III

accordingly, itaque.
answer, respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsum.
before, ante.
commonwealth, rēs publica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
daybreak, lūx, lūcis, *f.*; **at daybreak,** prīmā lūce.
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
early in the morning, māne.
exile, exsilium, -ī, *n.*
expect, spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
free, līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
guard, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.*; **at the house of,** apud, *w. acc.*
Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*
knight, eques, -itis, *m.*
look out, vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
murder, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
peril, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
secure, firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sharply, ācriter.
thanks, offer, grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
very, the, ipse, -a, -um, *gen.* ipsīus.
welfare, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
when, ubi, *w. indic.*
wherefore, quā rē.

VOCABULARY IV

among, in, *w. abl.*
appointed, cōnstitūtus, -a, -um.
arbitrator, arbiter, -trī, *m.*
as, ut; **as possible,** quam *w. superlative.*
assess, aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
atone for, satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *w.* dē *and abl.*
bordering on, fīnitimus, -a, -um, *w. dat.*
circumstance, rēs, -eī, *f.*
consent, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
envoy, lēgātus, -a, -um.
equip, ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
establish, cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum.
every, omnis, -e.
gather, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
means, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
none, nihil, *n., indecl.*
old, vetus, -eris.
particular, certus, -a, -um.
penalty, poena, -ae, *f.*
place, locus, -ī, *m.*
place in charge of, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *w. acc. and dat.*
precisely at, ad, *w. acc.*
ravage, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
region, pars, partis, *f.*
repair, reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
represent, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum.
settle, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
therefore, igitur.

winter-quarters, hīberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
wrong, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

VOCABULARY V

accustomed, be, soleō, -ēre, -itus sum.
advice, ask, cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, cōnsultum, *w. acc.*
assail, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
attempt, cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*
bid, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iūssum.
confess, fateor, -ērī, fassus sum.
crime, facinus, -oris, *n.*
dare, venture, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.
decide, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
destruction, exitium, -ī, *n.*
entire, ūniversus, -a, -um.
for my part, equidem.
frequently, often, saepe.
hesitate, dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w. inf.*
mild, lēnis, -e.
not yet, nōndum.
seem, videor, -ērī, vīsus sum.
take thought for, cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, cōnsultum, *w. dat.*
unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
useful, ūtilis, -e.
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
willing, be, volō, velle, voluī.

VOCABULARY VI

accomplice, comes, -itis, *m.*
accomplish, adsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
anything, (*after* sī, nisi, nē, *or* num) quis, quid.
as many . . . as, tot . . . quot.
band, manus, -ūs, *f.*
check, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
commit, concipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
concern, pertineō, -ēre, -uī, *w.* ad *and acc.*
crime, scelus, -eris, *n.*
decree of the senate, senātūs cōnsultum, -ī, *n.*
enmity, inimīcitia, -ae, *f.*
expose . . . to, obicio, -ere, -īecī, -iectum, *w.* in *and acc.*
find out, cōgnōsco, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.
for my part, equidem.
forever, semper.
get ready, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
how many, quot.
in accordance with, ex.
incur, suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
interests of the state, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
last, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*
no one, nēmō, nēminis, *m. and f.*
perhaps, fortasse.
prevent, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
punish, suppliciīs adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
scoundrel, scelerātus, -ī, *m.*

suffer, (*with word for "harm"*) capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
suffer punishment, poenās pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum.
trusty, certus, -a, -um.
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.

VOCABULARY VII

be without, careō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *w. abl.*
compel, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.
counsel, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
depart, exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
enter, ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
full often, persaepe.
god, deus, -ī, *m.*
harm, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *w. dat.*
immortal, immortālis, -e.
in the midst of, in, *w. abl.*
lay violent hands on, vim et manūs īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
massacre, caedēs, -is, *f.*
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
not wish, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
see to it, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.
senator, (*official title*) pater cōnscrīptus, patris cōnscrīptī, *m.*
to another place, aliō.
to some place, aliquō.
to the same place, eōdem.
violence, vis, *acc.* vim, *abl.* vī, *f.*
withdraw, concēdō, -ēre, -cessī, -cessum.
wretched, miser, -era, -erum.

VOCABULARY VIII

above, suprā.
affect, adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
assemble, meet, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
assign, attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
bread, pānis, -is, *m.*
burn, incendō, -ere, -dī, -cēnsum.
butcher, trūcīdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
consider, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
contract, locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
desire, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
eat, edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum.
friend of the people, populāris, -is.
infamous, nefārius, -a, -um.
meet, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
native land, patria, -ae, *f.*
none, nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* nūllīus.
plunder, dīripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum.
purpose, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
set up, conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
shatter, frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum.
speak, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
storm, hiems, -is, *f.*
that of yours, iste, -a, -ud, *gen.* istīus.

threaten, immineō, -ēre, *w. dat.*
undergo, subeō, -īre, iī, -itum.
wall, mūrus, -ī, *n.*
when. (*interr.*(quandō.
win, cōnsequor, -ī, -cūtus sum.
yet, tamen.

VOCABULARY IX

announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
at hand, be, adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
beat, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
carefully, dīligenter.
Comitium, comitium, -ī, *n.*
complete, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
demand, postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
feel grateful, grātiās habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
forefathers, māiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*
long ago, iam dūdum; iam prīdem.
mind, animus, -ī, *m.*
mistaken, be, errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; **be much mistaken,** vehementer errāre.
prestige, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*
punishment, supplicium, -ī, *n.*
reason, causa, -ae, *f.*
severe, gravis, -is.
show, doceō, -ēre, -uī.
suffer the death penalty, morte multor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
terribly, vehementer.
too, nimis.
two years, biennium, -ī, *n.*

VOCABULARY X

assault, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
deed, factum, -ī, *n.*
draw up, īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum.
flee, terga vertō,-ere, -tī, versum.
for a long time, diū.
for the purpose of, causā, *preceded by a gen.*
gain, potior, -īrī, -ītus sum.
get the better of it, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
hail! (h)avē! *pl.* (h)avēte!
harass, lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
hilltop, summus collis, summī collis, *m.*
intrust, permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
keep off, arceō, -ēre, -uī, *w.* ab *and abl.*
lead up, subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
letter, epistula, -ae, *f.*
line (*of battle*), aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
manage, administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
perform, praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitum.
power, imperium, -ī, *n.*
rush, contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentum.
seemly, decōrus, -a, -um.
shout, conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
stripling, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*
suddenly, subitō.
whole world, orbis (-is) terrārum, *m.*

withstand, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.

VOCABULARY XI

discover, cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.
dislike, unpopularity, invidia, -ae, *f.*
except, nisi.
hereafter, posteā.
keep from, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
now for a long time, iam dūdum; iam prīdem.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
so far (is it) from (its being true that) . . . that, tantum abest ut . . . ut.
so many, tot.
tempest, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*
willingly, libenter.

VOCABULARY XII

attain, adsequor, -ī, -cūtus sum.
borders, fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
bring to pass, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
cannot but, facere nōn possum, *w.* quīn *and subj.*
common, commūnis, -e.
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.
doubt (*verb*), dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
doubt (*noun*), dubium, -ī, *n.*
drive from, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
exceedingly, vehementer.
land, ager, -grī, *m., frequently in pl.*
learn, cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.
mother, māter, mātris, *f.*
refuse, recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
strive (for), labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
the outcome is, that, ēvenit ut, *w. subj.*
there is the additional circumstance, that, accēdit quod, *w. ind.*
very many, permultī, -ae, -a.

VOCABULARY XIII

base, turpis, -e.
case, causa, -ae, *f.*
cautious, prūdēns, -entis.
conscientiously, religiōsē.
determine, dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum.
engaged in, be, versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *w.* in *and abl.*
feel, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum.
fortunate, fortūnātus, -a, -um.
guilty, nocēns, -entis.
hate, ōdī, -isse, ōsūrus.
only, (*adj.*) sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* sōlīus; ūnus, -a, -um, *gen.* ūnīus; (*adv.*) sōlum; tantum.
public business, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
recompense, grātiam referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum.
severe, gravis, -e.
shrewd, callidus, -a, -um.
very much, vehementer.

without the command, iniūssū.
worship, colō, -ere, -uī, cultum.

VOCABULARY XIV

commander-in-chief, summus imperātor, summī imperātōris, *m.*
defeat, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
deliberation, dēlīberātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
fleet, classis, -is, *f.*
force, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.
land and sea, by, terrā marīque.
lofty, altus, -a, -um.
moreover, autem.
nevertheless, tamen.
of the olden time, antīquus, -a, -um.
overcome, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sink, dēprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
such *or* **so important,** tantus, -a, -um.
take, sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum; **take upon oneself,** sibi sūmere.

VOCABULARY XV

ash, ashes, cinis, -eris, *m.*
betake oneself, cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *w. reflex.*
dwelling, tēctum, -ī, *n.*
foreign, exterus, -a, -um.
gain, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
harmony, concordia, -ae, *f.*
lovely, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
madness, furor, -ōris, *m.*
means, modus, -ī, *m.*, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
nothing left, nihil reliquī.
pass over, omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
pay the penalty, poenās pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum.
remind, admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
stupid, stultus, -a, -um.
unless, nisi.
upright, innocēns, -entis.
very much, vehementer.
wisely, sapienter.

VOCABULARY XVI

anyone (*in negative sentences*), quisquam, quidquam *and* quicquam, *gen.* cūiusquam.
companion, comrade, socius, -ī, *m.*
deliver a speech against, ōrātiōnem habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *w.* in *and acc.*
dread, timeō, -ēre, -uī, (*prudent fear*) metuō, -ere, -uī; (*reverent fear*) vereor, -ērī, -itus sum.
gladly, libenter.
menace, immineō, -ēre, *w. dat.*
necessary, be, oportet, -ēre, -uit, *impers.*; necesse est; *or use passive periphrastic.*
O that! If only, utinam; (*neg.*) utinam nē.
odium, invidia, -ae, *f.*

patrol, vigilia, -ae, *f.*
remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.
said he, inquit, *pl.* inquiunt.
so much, tam.
take away, ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
talk, loquor, -ī, -cūtus sum.

VOCABULARY XVII

as if, as though, just as if, ut sī; ac sī; quasi; quam sī; tamquam; tamquam sī; velut; velut sī.
as long as, so long as, if only, provided that, dum; modo; dummodo.
attach, coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum.
burst forth, ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum.
companion, comes, -itis, *m.*
condition, condiciō, -ōnīs, *f.*
conquer, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
consequence, be of, interest *or* rēfert, *w. gen.*
enthusiasm, studium, -ī, *n.*
Gallic, Gallicus, -a, -um.
lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
make overtures to, sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
meeting, conventus, -ūs, *m.*
on the understanding that, under the agreement that, ut, ita ut, *neg.* nē, ut nē.
opportunity, facultās, -ātis, *f.*
permitted, it is, licet, -ēre, licuit *and* licitum est.
rebellion, tumultus, -ūs, *m.*
stir up, excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
unharmed, incolumis, -e.

VOCABULARY XVIII

act, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
draw, ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
hand over, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
intact, integer, -gra, -grum.
outcome, ēventus, -ūs, *m.*
plot against, īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus sum, *w. dat.*
praetor, praetor, -ōris, *m.*
seal, sīgnum, -ī, *n.*
suppose, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*
wise, sapiēns, -entis.

VOCABULARY XIX

be acquainted with, *perf. of* nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum.
begin, incipiō, -ere, -cepī, -ceptum; coepī, -isse, (*with inf. pass.*) coeptus sum; initium faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, *w. gen.*
concern, cūra, -ae, *f.*
dangerous, (*of ground*) *comparative of* inīquus, -a, -um.
dignity, dignitās, -ātis, *f.*
furthermore, praetereā.
get into, prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *w.* in *and abl.*
hemmed in, be, *pass. of* circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.

keep back, contineō, -ere, -uī, -tentum.
lead, dūco, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
position, locus, -ī, *m.*
strike into, iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *w. acc. and dat.*
swarms, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
terror, terror, -ōris, *m.*
unsuspectingly, inopīnāns, -antis, *adj.*
wonder, mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum.

VOCABULARY XX

acknowledge, cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.
although, cum; etsī; etiamsī; licet; quamquam; quamvīs; tametsī; ut; (*neg.*) nē.
assert, praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
at first, prīmō.
at the end, ad extrēmum.
at the time when, tum cum.
before that, anteā.
courtesy, hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*
deny, negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
energetic, ācer, ācris, ācre.
evidence, indicium, -ī, *n.*
exchange glances with, inter sē aspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum.
fancy, be sure, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
foresee, prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum.
humblest, īnfimus, -a, -um.
impudently, impudenter.
open, aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertum.
order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iūssum.
since, cum.
somewhat, nōn nihil.
tablet, tabella, -ae, *f.*
the following, ille, -a, -ud, *gen.* illīus.
violently, vehementer.
wrought up, perturbātus, -a, -um.

VOCABULARY XXI

after, postquam.
as long as, quam diū.
as soon as, cum prīmum.
ascertain, cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.
avert, dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
before, priusquam.
break out, coörior, -īrī, -ortus sum.
catch, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
compare, cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
each, quisque, quaeque, quidque (*subst.*) and quodque (*adj.*).
exactly, certē.
express an opinion, sententiam ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
farther, ulterior, -ōris.
finish, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
go on, pass. of gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
hither, citerior, -ius.
Manlius', of Manlius, Manliānus, -a, -um.
matter, rēs, reī, *f.*

Mulvian, Mulvius, -a, -um.
pass a vote of thanks, grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
rush out, ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum.
set forth, explain, expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
signal, sīgnum, -ī, *n.*
since, cum.
so long as, dum.
till, until, dum.
thanksgiving, supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.*
vote, cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, cēnsum.
withstand, sustineō, -ere, -uī, -tentum.
write out, perscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum.

VOCABULARY XXII

actuated, mōtus, -a, -um.
again and again, iterum atque iterum.
any longer (*in negative sentences*), iam.
as to the fact that, quod.
beforehand, ante.
crush, check, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, pressum.
deliver, līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
emphatic, vehemēns, -entis.
favor, beneficium, -ī, *n.*
for a little while, paulum.
generously, līberē.
greatly, māgnopere *or* māgnō opere.
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*; tēctum, -ī, *n.*
imperfectly, male.
it remains that, restat ut, *w. subj.*
linger, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
raid, incursiō, -ōnis, *f.*
rather, *use the comparative.*
sorry, be, doleō, -ēre, -uī.
stranger, īgnōtus, -ī, *m.*
subdued, pācātus, -a, -um.
take away, (*by violence*) ēripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum.
understanding, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*

VOCABULARY XXIII

adopt, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum.
annihilate, blot out, exstinguō, -ere, -nxī, -nctum.
cause, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
chain, vinculum, -ī, *n.*
deed, facinus, -oris, *n.*
empire, imperium, -ī, *n.*
even if, even though, etsī; etiamsī; tametsī.
exhibit (*a characteristic*), versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *w.* in *and abl.*
foul, nefārius, -a, -um.
glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*
granted that, ut, (*neg.* nē); licet.
however (*adv.*), quamvīs.
in no wise, nūllō modō.
maintain, contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentum.
observe, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum.

ordain, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
penalty, punishment, poena, -ae, *f.*
reject, removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
severe, sevērus, -a, -um.
severity, sevēritās, -ātis, *f.*
valiant, fortis, -e.
view, judgment, sententia, -ae, *f.*
without, sine, *w. abl.*

VOCABULARY XXIV

for the future, in posterum.
goodwill, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*
hidden, be, lateō, -ēre, -uī.
honor, fidēs, (-ē *and* -eī), *f.*
let go, dīmitto, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
make up one's mind, resolve upon, statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
offend, offendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsum.
out of, ex, *w. abl.*
shun, vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
summon, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w.* ad *and reflex.*
suspicion, suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.*
tear, lacrima, -ae, *f.*
troublesome, molestus, -a, -um.
unite, coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum.

VOCABULARY XXV

ancestors, māiōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*
attentively, dīligenter.
brave, resolute, fortis, -e.
bury, sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, -pultum.
carry out, trānsigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum.
convene, gather, convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
desperate, dēspērātus, -a, -um.
dishonorable, inhonestus, -a, -um.
force, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
forthwith, statim.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
garland, corōna, -ae, *f.*
harmony, be in, cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum.
honor, honōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
intention, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
interfere, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
large number, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
learn of, cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.
listen, attendō, -ere, -dī, -tum.
perish, pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
perpetrate, committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
rank, ōrdō, -dinis, *m.*
rashly, temerē.
reproach, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reward, mūnus, -eris, *n.*
sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*
take pains to, operam dō, dare, dedī, datum, *w.* ut *or* nē *and subj.*
together with, ūnā cum.
valiantly, fortiter.
wrath, īra, -ae, *f.*

VOCABULARY XXVI

bring back, redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
carry to, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *w.* ad *and acc.*
direct, iubeō, -ere, iussī, iūssum.
duty, officium, -ī, *n.*
embark, in nāvem *or* nāvīs ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
fair, idōneus, -a, -um.
find, nancīscor, -ī, nactus *and* nanctus sum.
four, quattuor.
guest-friend, hospes, -itis, *m.*
ignorant, īnsciēns, -entis.
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
morning, in the, māne.
occupy, (*embarrass*) impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
religious scruple, religiō, -ōnis, *f.*
restrain, coërceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
set sail, nāvibus proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum.
shout, clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
take across, trāducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
take measures, take pains, operam dō, dare, dedī, datum.
tarry, commoror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
transfer, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
trip, iter, itineris, *n.*
watch, custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
weather, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*

VOCABULARY XXVII

at peace, quiētus, -a, -um.
become silent, conticēsco, -ere, -uī.
celebrate a triumph, triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
change, mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
collapse, concidō, -ere, -cidī.
compass about, circumclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sum.
credit, fidēs, (-e *and* -eī), *f.*
decision, sententia, -ae, *f.*
desert, dēserō, -ere, -uī, -sertum.
despair of, dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
dissension, dissēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.*
enfeeble, dēbilitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
extend, amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
follow up, pursue, persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
found, condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
get out of the way, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
grandfather, avus, -ī, *m.*
handwriting, manus, -ūs, *f.*
liquidation, payment, solūtiō, -ōnis, *f.*
look on, aspectō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum.
love, amor, -ōris, *m.*
obtain, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
order, ōrdō, -dinis, *m.*
overlook, neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.

overwhelmed, abiectus, -a, -um.
pains, labōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*
read, (*aloud*) recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
recall, revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reckon, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
reign, rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
since (*prep.*), post.
stop, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
thrust out, ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
vote, dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum.

VOCABULARY XXVIII

approach, (*figurative use*) attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum.
attend, attendō, -ere, -dī, -tum.
be silent, taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
boldly, fortiter.
censure, judge, cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, cēnsum.
confer, mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
countryman, cīvis, -is, *m.*, *w.* meus, tuus, *etc.*
distinguished, important, amplus, -a, -um.
emergency, tempus, -oris, *n.*
exercise, ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*
finally, dēnique.
have respect to, aspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum.
let, patior, -ī, passus sum; sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm.
lover, amātor, -ōris, *m.*
public office, honor, -ōris, *m.*

VOCABULARY XXIX

base, turpis, -e.
commission, imperium, -ī, *n.*
consulship, cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.*
cry, conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
end, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
fortunately, fēlīciter.
glad, be, laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
in crowds, frequēns, -entis.
notable, praeclārus, -a, -um.
reach, attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum.
word, vōx, vōcis, *f.*
yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum.

VOCABULARY XXX

affair, rēs, reī, *f.*
affairs of state, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
assembly, cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.*
at least, saltem.
bed, lectus, -ī, *m.*
devote, cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
eulogize, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
fall asleep, get to sleep; somnum capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
fault, culpa, -ae, *f.*
grant, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
how feel, quem animum suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
indulgence, venia, -ae, *f.*
magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
magnificent, praeclārus, -a, -um.
make ready, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
most, māximē.

necessary, necessārius, -a, -um.
perfect, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
position, dīgnitās, -ātis, *f.*
preparation, comparātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
renown, laus, -dis, *f.*
sleep, dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
take to heart, graviter ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

VOCABULARY XXXI

applause, plausus, -ūs, *m.*
arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
brilliant, inlūstris, -e.
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*
commend, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
constantly, semper.
courageous, fortis, -e.
dispute, dissēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.*
engage in rivalry, contendō, -ere, -dī, -tum, *w.* inter *and reflex.*
fiercely, ācriter.
fight a battle, proelium faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
follow after, subsequor, -ī, -cūtus sum.
fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*
imagine, exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
judge, iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
keep oneself, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *w. reflex.*
upon, in, *w. abl.*
which of two, uter, -tra, -trum, *gen.* ūtrius.

VOCABULARY XXXII

as / **so** ... **as,** tam ... quam.
as large ... as, tantus ... quantus.
as many ... as, tot ... quot.
as often ... as, totiēns ... quotiēns.
certain, a, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *subst.*, *and* quoddam, *adj.*, *gen.* cūiusdam.
each one, / **every man,** quisque, quaeque, quidque, *subst.*, and quodque, *adj.*, *gen.* cūiusque.
how, quō modō.
how often, quotiēns.
so often, totiēns.
some, someone, aliquis, -qua, -quid, *subst.*, *and* aliquī, -qua, -quod, *adj.*; nonnūllī, -ae, -a.
such ... as, (*of quality*) tālis ... quālis; ēius modī ... quī, quae, quod *or* ut; (*of quantity*) tantus ... quantus.
the ... the, quō ... eō, *or* quantō ... tantō.
thence, inde.
whence, where from, from which, unde.
whither, where to, quō.

---

as he says, ut ait; **as they say,** ut āiunt.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.

constant, adsiduus, -a, -um.
entreaty, (prex), precis, *f.*
gain a request, impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
hardy, fortis, -e.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
not yet, nōndum.
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
the one . . . the other, alter . . . alter.

VOCABULARY XXXIII

advance, prōcessiō, -ōnis, *f.*
ambuscade, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
battle, come off victorious in, proeliīs secundīs ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum.
battle, engage in, proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
battle, withdraw from, proeliō excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
camp, break up, castra moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
camp, pitch, castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.
carnage, clādēs, -is, *f.*
close the line, bring up the rear, āgmen claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum.
hurl, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
hurry, contendō, -ere, -dī, -tum.
in heavy marching order, impedītus, -a, -um.
in light marching order, without baggage, expedītus, -a, -um.
in other respects, cētera.
lay down one's arms, ab armīs discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
levy, make a, dīlectum habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
obedient, dictō audiēns, -entis, *w. dat.*
pack, sarcinae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
partly, partim.
protection, commit oneself to, in fidem veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum; **pledge the protection of the state,** fidem pūblicam dō, dare, dedī, datum; **take under one's protection,** in fidem recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
retreat, pedem referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
several, aliquot.
take to one's heels, terga vertō, -ere, -tī, -sum.
terminate by treaty, compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
throw away, abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
triumph, triumphus, -ī, *m.*
war, finish by conquest, bellum cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

VOCABULARY XXXIV

address, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *w.* cum *and abl.*
appeal to, provocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w.* ad *and acc.*
aristocratic party, optimātēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
at stake, be, *pass. of* agō, ere, ēgī, āctum.
attain to highest offices, ad

summōs honōrēs perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.

behave oneself as, sē gerere prō, *w. abl.*

bribe, pecūniā corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum.

citizenship, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*

control of the government, get, rērum potior, -īrī, -ītus sum.

elect (*adj.*), dēsīgnātus, -a, -um.

elections, hold, comitia habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

enrol in the state, ad cīvitātem adscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum.

enter upon office, magistrātum ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum.

ever since I was of age, ab ineunte aetāte.

exile, ex civitate expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.

inconsistent with, be, abhorreō, -ēre, -uī, *w.* ab *and abl.*

obtain for, impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w. acc. and dat.*

office, honor, -ōris, *m.*; **remove from office,** mūnus abrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w. dat.*

parvenu, novus homō, novī hominis. (*In Latin the reference is to official rank, and does not imply social "impossibility."*)

patriotic, patriae amāns, -antis.

political and personal influence, auctōritās et grātia.

politics, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*; **enter politics,** *or* **political life,** ad rem pūblicam adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.

private citizen, prīvātus, -ī, *m.*

public meeting, cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.*

resign, sē abdicāre ab, *w. abl.*

revolution, novae rēs, novārum rerum, *f. pl.*; **desire a revolution,** novīs rēbus studeō, -ēre, -uī.

Rostra, rōstra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

side with, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *w.* cum *and abl.*

stage, gradus, -ūs, *m.*

strongest, be, plūrimum valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

suffer loss of civil rights, capite dēminuor, -ī, -ūtus sum.

support a proposal, pedibus īre in sententiam.

VOCABULARY XXXV

adopt, ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *w. abl.*

advocate, advocātus, -ī, *m.*

appeal, prōvocātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

case, the (*of some one*) **is tried,** agitur dē, *w. abl.*

charge, crīmen, -inis, *n.*

court of law, quaestiō lēgitima, quaestiōnis lēgitimae, *f.*

extortion, (pecuniae) repetundae, *f. pl.*

fine, multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

governor, propraetor, -ōrīs, *m.*

guilty of a capital offence, reus (-ī) capitis.

juror, iūdex, -icis, *m.*

life is at stake, caput agitur.

lot, sors, -rtis, *f.*

pass, (*a law*) ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
permanent courts, quaestiōnēs (-um) perpetuae (-ārum), *f. pl.*
plead a case, causam dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
preside over, praesum, -esse, -fuī, *w. dat.*
prison for life, vincula (-ōrum) sempiterna (-ōrum), *n. pl.*
proclamation, ēdictum, -ī, *n.*
propose, (*a law*) rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
repeal, abrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sentence to loss of civil rights, capitis damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
summon to court, in iūdicium vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
table (*of laws*), tabula, -ae, *f.*
treason, prōditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
undertake a case, causam recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
veto, vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum.
witness, testis, -is, *m.*

VOCABULARY XXXVI

author, scrīptor, -ōris, *m.*; **the classic authors,** veterēs scrīptōrēs.
be acquainted with, sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
branches of learning, artēs, -ium, *f. pl.*
bury oneself in books, litterīs sē abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
cultivate, study, colō, -ere, -uī, cultum.
culture, higher education, hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*
dedicate, dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
describe, exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
greatly, (*w.* interest, rēfert, *etc.*) māgnī.
it is worth one's while, est tantī, *w. dat. of person.*
learned, doctus, -a, -um; ērudītus, -a, -um.
learning, studies, doctrīna, -ae, *f.*
line, verse, versus, -ūs, *m.*
literature, litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
little book, libellus, -ī, *m.*
oratorical ability, ōrātiō (-ōnis) et facultās (-ātis).
poem, carmen, -ĭnis, *n.*
poetry, of, poēticus, -a, -um.
polite accomplishments, līberālia (-ium) studia (-ōrum), *n. pl.*
prepare for, (*by teaching*) īnfōrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *w.* ad *and acc.*
receive a liberal education, optimīs studiīs ērudior, -īrī, -ītus sum.
refined, refining, hūmānus, -a, -um.
relate, record, prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
review, recolō, -ere, -uī, -cultum.
skill, ars, artis, *f.*
study, pursuit, studium, -ī, *n.*
subject for composition, rēs ad scrībendum.
system of philosophy, doctrīna, -ae, *f.*

systematic training provided by a liberal education, ratiō cōnfōrmātiōque doctrīnae.
treat of, attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum.
type of mind, facultās (-ātis) ingenī, *f.*
with care and thoughtfulness, accūrāte cōgitātēque.

VOCABULARY XXXVII

about, circiter.
afterwards, post.
April, Aprīlis, -is, *adj.*
before last, superior, -ius.
day before, prīdiē.
day before yesterday, nūdius tertius.
December, December, -bris, *adj.*
first, (*of month*) Kalendae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
founding of the city, urbs condita, urbis conditae, *f.*
Ides, Idūs, -uum, *f. pl.*
January, Iānuārius, -a, -um, *adj.*
July, Quīnctīlis, -is *and* Iūlius, -a, -um, *adj.*
May, Māius, -a, -um, *adj.*
Nones, Nōnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
please, quaesō (*parenthetical*).
September, September, -bris, *adj.*

VOCABULARY XXXVIII

act of violence, facinus, -oris, *n.*
agreeable, iūcundus, -a, -um.
appease, plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
barely, male.
basis, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
business, negōtium, -ī, *n.*
calmness, with, aequō animō.
character, ingenium, -ī, *n.*
consider virtue the highest good, summum bonum in virtūte pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.
depraved, perditus, -a, -um.
disgraceful, turpis, -e.
do one's duty, in officiō maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
excellent quality, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
good conscience, cōnscientia (-ae) bene factī.
immoral, turpis, -e.
inauspicious, nefāstus, -a, -um.
inconsistency, mōbilitās (-ātis) et levitās (-ātis) animī.
integrity, innocentia, -ae, *f.*
lead, (*a life*) agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
make trial of, experior, -īrī, -pertus sum.
miraculously, dīvīnitus.
neglect one's duty, ab officiō discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
omit, praetermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
principles of conduct, ratiōnēs (-um) vītae.
right, fās, *n., indecl.*
sage, sapiēns, -entis.
self-control, temperantia, -ae, *f.*
self-controlled, moderātus, -a, -um; temperāns, -antis.
self-indulgent, intemperāns, -antis.
sin, nefās, *n., indecl.*

temple, templum, -ī, *n.*
tend, pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
there is no reason why, nihil est quod, *w. subj.*
thought, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
virtuous, (*of conduct*) honestus, -a, -um.
with due ceremony, rīte.
wrong, iniūriam īnferrō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.

VOCABULARY XXXIX

account, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
borrow money, (*at interest*) pecūniam faenore accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
buy, emō, -ere, ēmī, emptum.
daily, cotīdiānus, -a, -um.
debt, aes alienum, aeris aliēnī, *n.*
exchange, commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
fall, incidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum.
farm, praedium, -ī, *n.*
for a large sum, māgnī.
gambler, āleātor, -ōris, *m.*
get for nothing, grātiīs accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
get out of debt, ēx aere aliēnō excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
go down, (*of credit*) dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
large, māgnus, -a, -um.
loss, suffer, damnum faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
owe, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
patrimony, rēs familiāris, reī familiāris, *f.*
pay, (*of money*) pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum; solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum.
poor, pauper, -eris.
poverty, paupertās, -ātis, *f.*
render, reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
sell, vendō, -ere, -didī. *Instead of the passive, use* vēneō, -īre, -iī.
sesterce, sestertius, -ī, *gen. pl.* -ium, *m.*
set up, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
shop, taberna, -ae, *f.*
spend money on, sūmptum faciō, -ere, -fēcī, factum, *w.* in *and acc.*

VOCABULARY XL

descend, dēscendō, -ere, -dī, dēscēnsum.
devastate, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
encounter, congredior, -ī, -gressus sum, *w.* cum *and abl.*
fair, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
give up allegiance, ab officiō discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
ground, solum, -ī, *n.*
let in, admittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
mere, ipse, -a, -um, *gen.* ipsīus.
naught left, nihil reliquī.
oblige, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.
resist, resistō, -ere, -stitī.
right, iūs, iūris, *n.*
save, (= *except*) nisi.
second, secundus, -a, -um.

slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*
stop, dētineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
suffer defeat, *pass of* superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūm.
swear, iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
take from, adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum.
vanquish, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
visit with, adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

REFERENCES TO THE NEW ALLEN AND GREENOUGH GRAMMAR. WRITING LATIN. BOOK TWO.

Footnote to p. 5: 595–599.

Lesson I. *Direct Simple Questions:* 269.b, 330.1, 332.b, 333.a. *Direct Disjunctive Questions:* 334, 335.Note, a–d. *Indirect Questions. Sequence of Tenses:* 330.2, 573–575.a, 481, 482.1, 2, 483, 484 complete, 485.b, 1–3.

Lesson II. *Moods in Indirect Discourse:* 578–580. *Tense of the Infinitive:* 584.a, b, 569.a. *Tense of the Subjunctive:* 585, 482.1, 2, 483, 484 complete, 485.b. *Pronouns:* 296 and 2, 300.1, 2, a, 299.a.

Lesson III. *Personal and Impersonal Construction:* 582 and a. *Verbs of Hoping and Promising:* 580.c.

Lesson V. *Infinitive as Subject:* 452.1, a, 454 and Note, 354.c. *Infinitive as Object* (*Complementary Infinitive*): 456, 458, 563.a, b. (*Footnote to p. 20*, 485.j.)

Lesson VI. *Pure Final Sentences:* 530–531.1. *Relative Final Sentences:* 531.2, a, 532.

Lesson VII. *Complementary Final Sentences* (*Substantive Clauses of Purpose*): 560, 561.a, 563.a, b, 1, 2. c–e, 558.b. *Verbs of Fearing:* 564.

Lesson VIII. *Nature of Gerund and Gerundive:* 501-503.a. *Accusative with* ***Ad:*** 506 and Note 2, 533.b. *Accusative with Special Verbs:* 500.4. *Genitive with* ***Causa*** *and* ***Gratia:*** 504.b.

Lesson IX. *Genitive:* 504 and Note 1, a, b. *Accusative:* 506 and Notes. *Ablative:* 507 and Note 2. *Passive Periphrastic:* 500.1–3, 196. *Dative of the Agent:* 374 and a. *Supines:* 508, 509 and Note 1, 510 and Notes 1, 2,

Lesson XI. *Pure Consecutive Sentences:* 537.1, (2), a, 559, 571.b. *Final and Consecutive Sentences Contrasted:* 538. *Sequence of Tenses:* 485.c.

Lesson XII. *Verbs of Effecting:* 568 and Note 1, 569.1. *Verbs of Hindering:* 558.a, Notes, b. ***Licet, Necesse est, Oportet:*** 565 and Notes 2, 3, 569.2, Note 2.

Lesson XIII. *Characteristic:* 537.2, Notes, 535.a, Notes 1, 2, b. *Cause and Concession:* 535.e.

Lesson XV. *Protasis and Apodosis:* 512.a, c, 525.a, c. *Logical Conditional Sentences* (*Conditions with Nothing Implied*): 515, 516.1, a, c, d.

Lesson XVI. *Ideal Conditional Sentences* (*Future Less Vivid*) : 516.2, b, c. *Unreal Conditional Sentences* (*Contrary to Fact*) : 517 and c. *Sequence of Tenses:* 485.h. *The Optative Subjunctive:* 441, 442.

Lesson XVII. *Conditional Sentences of Comparison:* 524. *Sentences of Proviso with* ***Dum, Modo,*** *and* ***Dummodo:*** 528. *Sentences of Stipulation:* 537.a, Note. (*Footnotes, p. 53.* (1) 343.c, Note 1; (2) 585.)

Lesson XVIII. *The Apodosis:* 589.2, a, 1–3, b, 2–4, Note 1. *The Protasis:* 589.1, b, 1, 483, 485.g.

Lesson XX. ***Cum*** *Temporal:* 545.Note 1, a, 546.Notes 1–3, a, 547. ***Cum*** *Causal and* ***Cum*** *Concessive:* 549.

Lesson XXI. *Antecedent Action:* 543 and a. *Contemporaneous Action:* 552, 553. *Subsequent Action:* 550–551.c. (*Footnote, p. 61:* 563.e and Note 1.)

Lesson XXII. ***Quod, Quia,*** *and* ***Quoniam:*** 540.1, 2, Notes. *Substantive Clauses with* ***Quod:*** 572.a, b. (*Footnote, p. 63:* 381. *Footnote, p. 64:* 323.b, c, 1.)

Lesson XXIII. *Indicative Alone:* 527.d, Note. *Subjunctive Alone:* 527.a, b. *Indicative and Subjunctive:* 527.c.

Lesson XXV. *Tense of the Participle:* 158.a, b, c, 1, 2, Note, 491. *The Participle as Substantive and as Adjective:* 494 and a, 495. *Ablative Absolute:* 419 and a, 489, 492, 493.1, 2.

Lesson XXVI. *Coördinate Clauses Represented by Participles:* 496 and Notes 1, 2. *Participle Equivalent to a Temporal Clause:* 496.Examples 1 and 2. *Participle Equivalent to a Causal Clause:* 496.Example 3. *Participle Equivalent to a Conditional or Concessive Clause:* 496.Examples 5 and 6. *Participle Equivalent to an Abstract Noun:* 497.

Lesson XXVIII. *Exhortations:* 439.Notes 1, 2, a. *Commands:* 448 and a, 449.1, 2, a. *Prohibitions:* 450.

Lesson XXIX. *Subjunctive in Direct Questions:* 444, 462.a. *Questions in Indirect Discourse:* 586. *Commands in Indirect Discourse:* 588 and a, Notes.

Lesson XXX. *Partial Obliquity:* 592. *Subjunctive by Attraction:* 593. *Dependent Apodosis of Unreal Conditions in Indirect Discourse:* 517.d. (The reference here is unsatisfactory. The rule is "When the apodosis of an unreal condition is made to depend on a sentence which requires the subjunctive, the pluperfect is turned into the periphrastic subjunctive; the imperfect is unchanged."—*Gildersleeve-Lodge.*)

Lesson XXXII. *Pronouns:* 295–315. *Correlatives:* 152, 217, 323.g. (*Footnote, p. 88:* 317.a.)

Lesson XXXIII. (*Direct Object:* 387.) *Inner Object* (*Cognate*): 390.c, d. (*Extent:* 423, 425.) (*Limit of Motion:* 221.2, 12, 22, 426.2, 427.2.) *Double Accusative:* 391–396. *Exclamatory Accusative:* 397,d. *Miscellaneous Expressions:* 397.a. (*Footnote, p. 90:* 584.a, Note.)

Lesson XXXIV. (*Indirect Object:* 361, 362.) (*Dative with Intransitives:* 366, 367.) (*Impersonal Use of Passive:* 372.) *Dative or Accusative:* 367.a. (*Dative with Compounds:* 370.a.) *Dative or Ablative:* 364. (*Dative of Possessor:* 373.) *Dative of Reference:* 376–378. (*Dative of the Agent:* 374.a.) (*Dative of the Purpose or End:* 382.1, Note 1.) (*Dative with Adjectives:* 383, 384.) (*Footnote, p. 93:* 290.)

Lesson XXXV. (*Possessive Genitive:* 343.a, b.) *Subjective and Objective Genitive:* 343.Note 1, 347, 348.) *Genitive of Quality:* 345.Note, a, b. *Genitive as a Predicate:* 343.b, c, 345 (see Examples). (*Partitive Genitive:* 346.a–e.)

Lesson XXXVI. (*Genitive with Adjectives:* 349.a.) (*Genitive with Verbs of Memory, Emotion, Judicial Action:* 350 complete, 352, 354 complete.) *Genitive with Verbs of Rating and Buying:* 417 and c. *Genitive with* ***Interest*** *and* ***Refert:*** 355 and a.

Lesson XXXVII. (*Ablative of Place Where. Locative:* 426.3, 427.3.) (*Ablative of Place Whence and of Separation:* 400–402, 426.1, 427.1.) (*Ablative of Time:* 423.) (*Ablative of Comparison:* 406, 407.a.) ***Plus*** *and* ***Amplius:*** 407.c. *Dis-*

proportion: 535.c. *Comparative Sentences with* ***Atque:*** 384.Note 2. *Ablative of Degree of Difference:* 414, 423.f, 433.1. *Dates:* 630, 631.

Lesson XXXVIII. (*Ablative of Accompaniment:* 413.a, b.) (*Ablative of Source and of Material:* 403.1, 2, a, d.) (*Ablative of Specification:* 418.) (*Ablative of Manner:* 412.) (*Ablative of Quality:* 415 and a.) (*Ablative of Means:* 409.) (*Ablative of Agent:* 405 and Note 2.)

Lesson XXXIX. *Ablative of Price:* 416; *cf.* 417 complete. (*Ablative with* ***Opus*** *and* ***Usus:*** 411 and b.) (*Ablative with Certain Deponents:* 410.) (*Ablative of Cause:* 404 and b.) (*Ablative Absolute:* See reference in BOOK TWO, Lesson XXV.)

THE GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

UNDER THE EDITORIAL SUPERVISION OF

BASIL L. GILDERSLEEVE AND **GONZALEZ LODGE**
PROFESSOR OF GREEK, JOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY
PROFESSOR OF LATIN, TEACHERS COLLEGE, COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY

WITH THE COÖPERATION OF

MOSES S. SLAUGHTER AND **THOMAS FITZ-HUGH**
PROFESSOR OF LATIN, UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN
PROFESSOR OF LATIN, UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA

FOR SECONDARY SCHOOLS

Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar. (School Edition.) By Professors GILDERSLEEVE and LODGE. vi + 330 pages. Price 80 cents.

A First Book in Latin, by CHARLES W. BAIN, late Head Master of the Sewanee Grammar School in the University of the South. Professor in South Carolina College. viii + 335 pages. Price 75 cents.

Caesar's Gallic War, by HARRY F. TOWLE and PAUL R. JENKS, Boys' High School, Brooklyn. xlviii + 558 pages. Price $1.25.

Dotey's Latin Exercise Books on Caesar's Gallic War. Price: Book I., 25 cents; Book II., 20 cents; Book III., 20 cents; Book IV., 20 cents.

Writing Latin. Book One—Second Year Work. By J. EDMUND BARSS, Latin Master, Hotchkiss School, Connecticut. 87 pages. Price 50 cents.

Writing Latin. Book Two — Third and Fourth Year Work. By J. EDMUND BARSS. 172 pages. Price 75 cents.

Cicero's Orations, by ROBERT W. TUNSTALL, Classical Master in Tome Institute, Maryland. Second edition, xlvi + 570 pages. Price $1.25.

Selections from Ovid, by JAMES N. ANDERSON, Instructor in Vanderbilt University. 270 pages. Price $1.00.

[OVER]

FOR COLLEGES

Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar (Third Edition, 1894). Revised and enlarged. By Professors GILDERSLEEVE and LODGE. x + 550 pages. Price $1.20.

Latin Composition, intended for the first year in college or highest classes in secondary schools. By Professors GILDERSLEEVE and LODGE. Second edition. Cloth, iv + 196 pages. Price 75 cents. Key price 60 cents.

Exercises for Translation into Latin Prose, by J. LEVERETT MOORE, Professor in Vassar College, and BEATRICE REYNOLDS KINKEAD. Second edition. Cloth, 80 pp. Price 50 cents.

Cicero, De Officiis, Book I., by F. E. ROCKWOOD, Professor in Bucknell University. Cloth, xxviii + 155 pages. Price 90 cents.

Cicero, the Second Philippic, by E. G. SIHLER, Professor in New York University. Cloth, xxxvi + 124 pages. Price 80 cents.

Selections from the Elegiac Poets, by JESSE B. CARTER, Assistant Professor in Princeton University. Cloth, xlvii + 283 pages. Price $1.25.

Juvenal, by H. L. WILSON, Associate Professor Johns Hopkins University. Cloth, lxxviii + 294 pages. Price $1.25.

Livy, Books XXI. and XXII., by Dr. EMORY B. LEASE, of the College of the City of New York. Price $1.25.

Other Books in Preparation

Correspondence invited.

UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

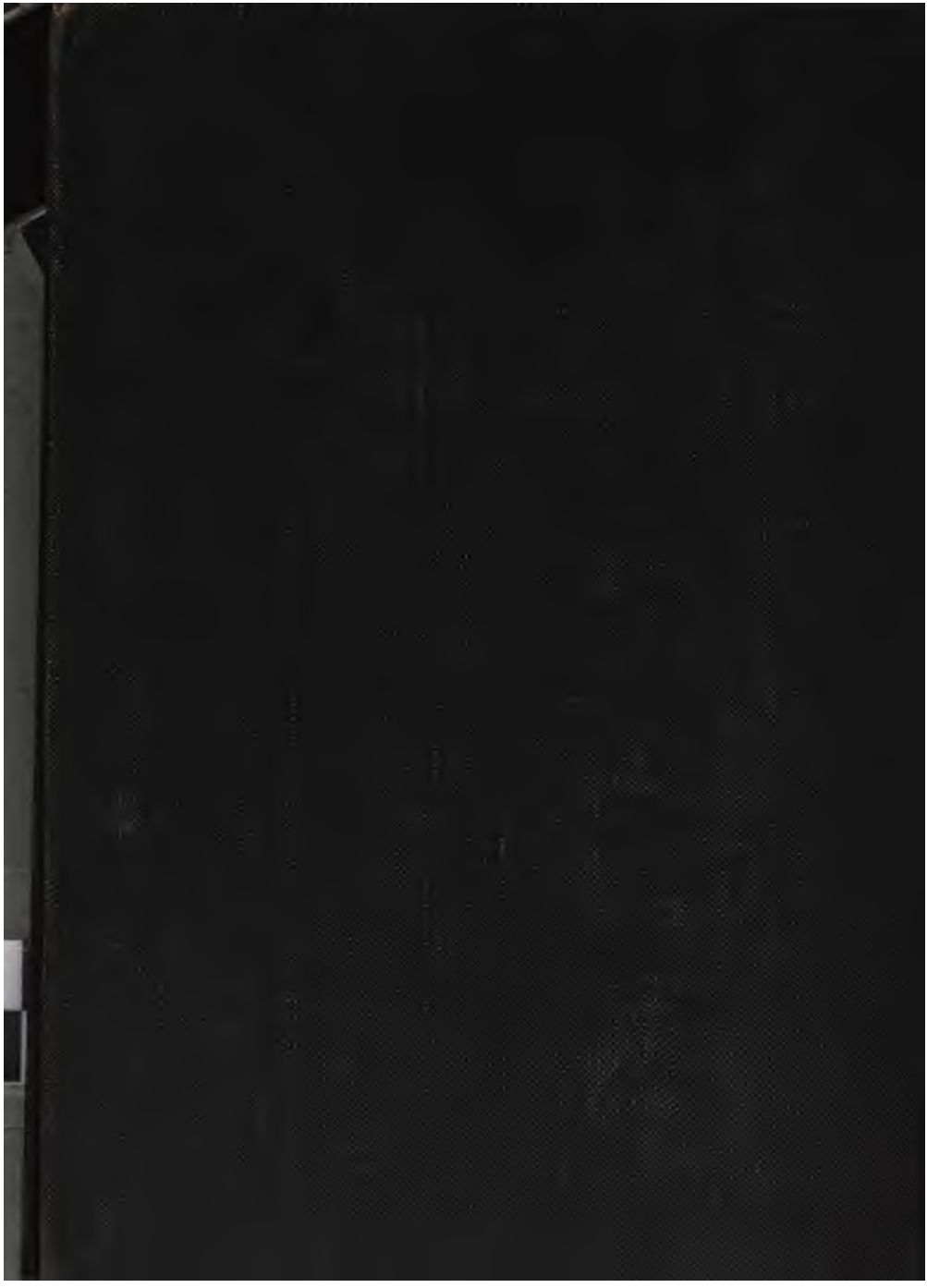
27-29 West 23d Street, New York

To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

10M—6-40

[illegible], J. [illegible] 597595

[illegible]ritin[illegible]

DATE	NAME	DATE

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STANFORD
597595